

Organize shared links in a Tab Group

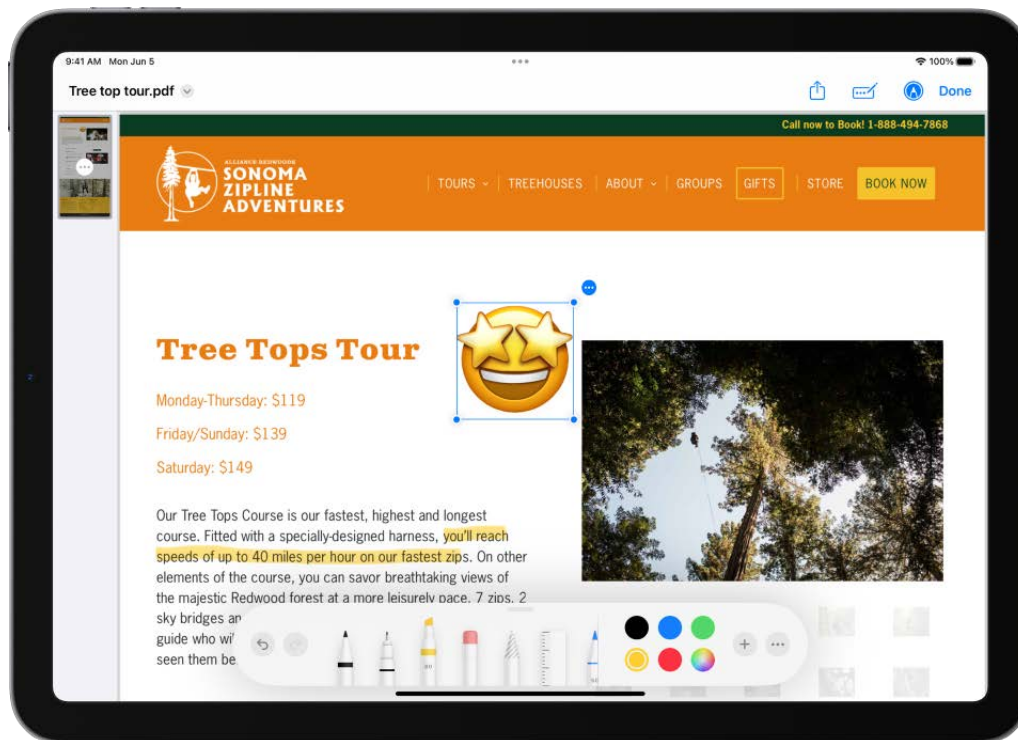
You can group related shared web links into Tab Groups to make them easier to find.

1. In Shared with You, touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.
 2. Tap New Tab Group to create one, or add the link to a Tab Group you already have.
-

Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPad

In the Safari app , you can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.

COMMENT: #ba #websites



1. Tap .
 2. Tap Markup , then use the tools to annotate the webpage.
 3. Tap Done, then tap Save File To.
 4. Choose a file to save it to, then tap Save.
-

Automatically fill in forms in Safari on iPad

In the Safari app , use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information and contact information.

Important: Never enter your password or credit card number on sites with a “Not Secure” warning. See the Apple Support article [If you see a “Not Secure” warning while browsing with Safari](#).

Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information or credit card number on your iPad to speed up filling in online forms and making purchases.

1. Go to Settings  > Safari > AutoFill.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Set up contact info:* Turn on Use Contact Info, tap My Info, then choose your contact card. The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.
 - *Set up credit card info:* Turn on Credit Cards, tap Saved Credit Cards, then tap Add Credit Card. Enter your credit card information into the fields provided or tap Use Camera to enter the information without typing.

Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.

1. Open the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.
3. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.
4. Tap any field to make changes.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to submit the form.

Note: You can use AutoFill to enter another person’s information from your contact list. For example, if you’re purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.

Fill in your credit card or Apple Cash information automatically

After you add a credit card or Apple Cash, you can use AutoFill to make online purchases without having to enter your full card number.

Note: In iPadOS 17.4 or later, you can use Apple Cash in apps or on the web where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted. See [Set up and use Apple Cash on iPad](#).

1. Open the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In a form on a website, tap the credit card information field.
3. Tap the saved card you want to use, or tap Scan Card to take a picture of the front of a credit card.

 **Tip:** After you enter a new card, you can save it in Safari AutoFill, then add it to Apple Pay. See [Add a credit or debit card](#).

You can use virtual card numbers at checkout and keep your real credit card number private. See [Set up Apple Pay on iPad](#). After you've set up a virtual card number, tap a card with  above the keyboard to use it at checkout.

Automatically fill in strong passwords

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPad create and save strong passwords for many of your accounts. See [Automatically fill in strong passwords](#).

Turn off AutoFill

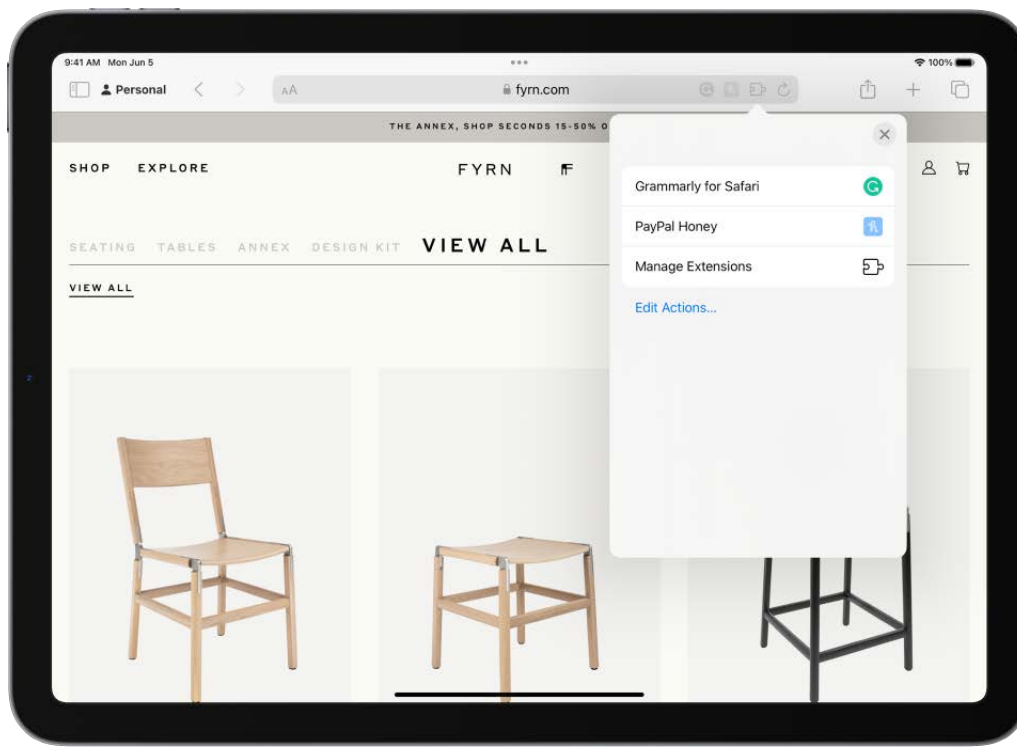
You can turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information, and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don't want your contact or credit card information to be readily available—for example if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information:* Go to Settings  > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off either option.
- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings  > Passwords, tap Password Options, then turn off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPad

In the Safari app , you can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, and more.

COMMENT: #ba #websites



Add Safari extensions

1. Open the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Tap More Extensions to browse through extensions in the App Store.
4. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Extensions you install for Safari on iPad that are also available on other platforms will appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID, to make them easier to find and download.

Manage your extensions

Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions. Select or deselect the extension's checkbox to turn that extension on or off.

Use extensions

You can use an extension to customize the way your browser works. You can turn Safari extensions on or off at any time.

1. Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
2. Tap each extension you want to give permissions to, then follow the onscreen instructions to choose how much access to give each extension.

Important: Check the extensions you have installed and make sure you're familiar with what they do.

Change extension settings for an individual website

You can turn an extension on or off for an individual website without changing your overall Safari settings.

1. Open the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Turn each extension on or off.

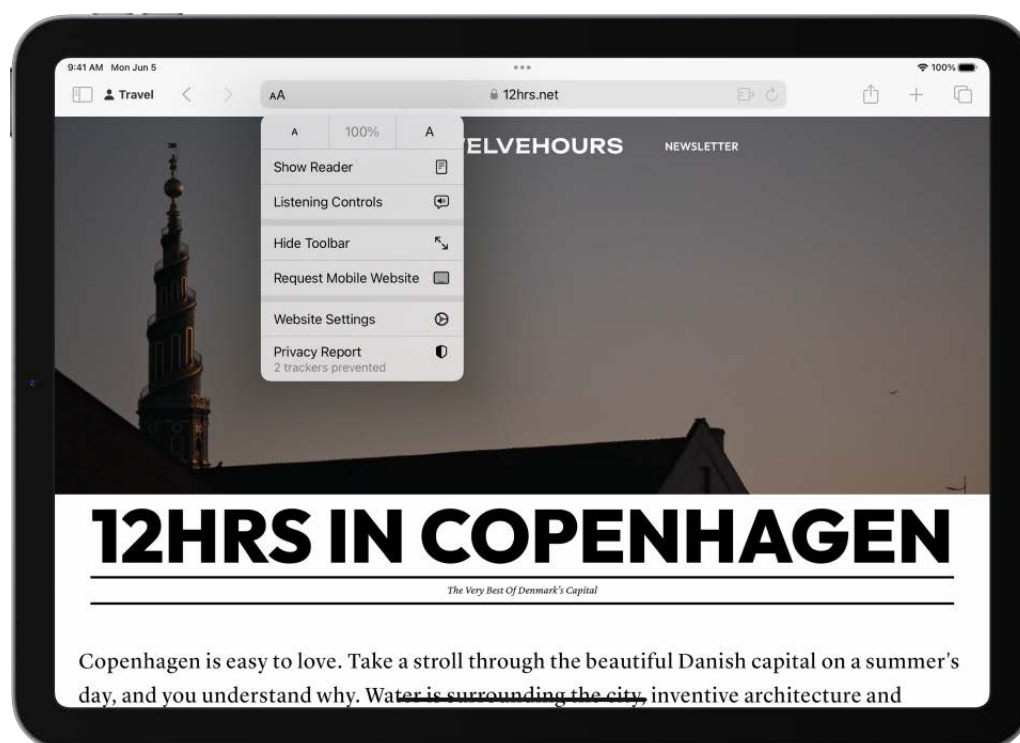
Remove an extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, then search for the extension you want to remove.
2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap "Delete app," then follow the onscreen instructions.

Hide ads and distractions in Safari on iPad

In the Safari app , use Safari Reader to view a page without ads, navigation menus, or other distracting items.

COMMENT: #ba #websites



Show Reader

Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

Tap **AA** on the left side of the search field, then tap Show Reader.

To return to the full page, tap **AA**, then tap Hide Reader.

Note: If Reader is dimmed, Reader isn't available for that page.

Automatically use Reader for a website

1. On a supported website, tap **AA**, then tap Website Settings.
2. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

Note: To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings  > Safari > Reader.

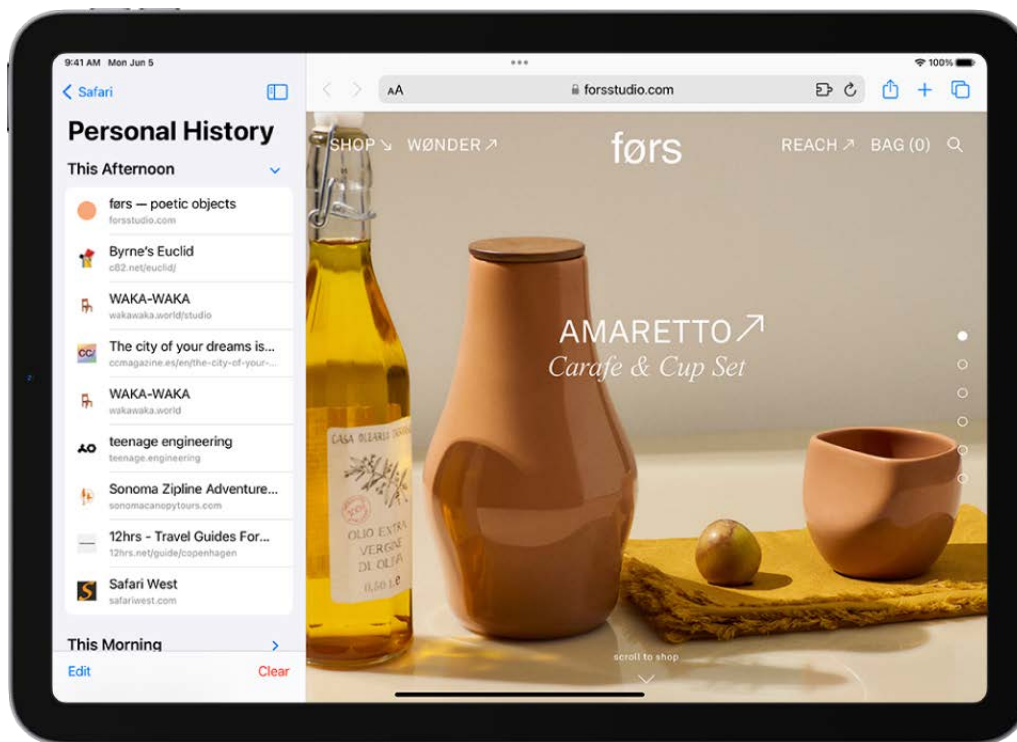
Block pop-ups

Go to Settings  > Safari, then turn on Block Pop-ups.

Clear your cache on iPad

In the Safari app , you can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPad. This action removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your iPad. This process also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

Note: Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.



1. Open the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , tap , then tap Clear.
3. Below Clear Timeframe, choose how much of your browsing history to clear.

Note: If you have Safari profiles set up, select a profile to clear only the history of that profile, or select All Profiles.

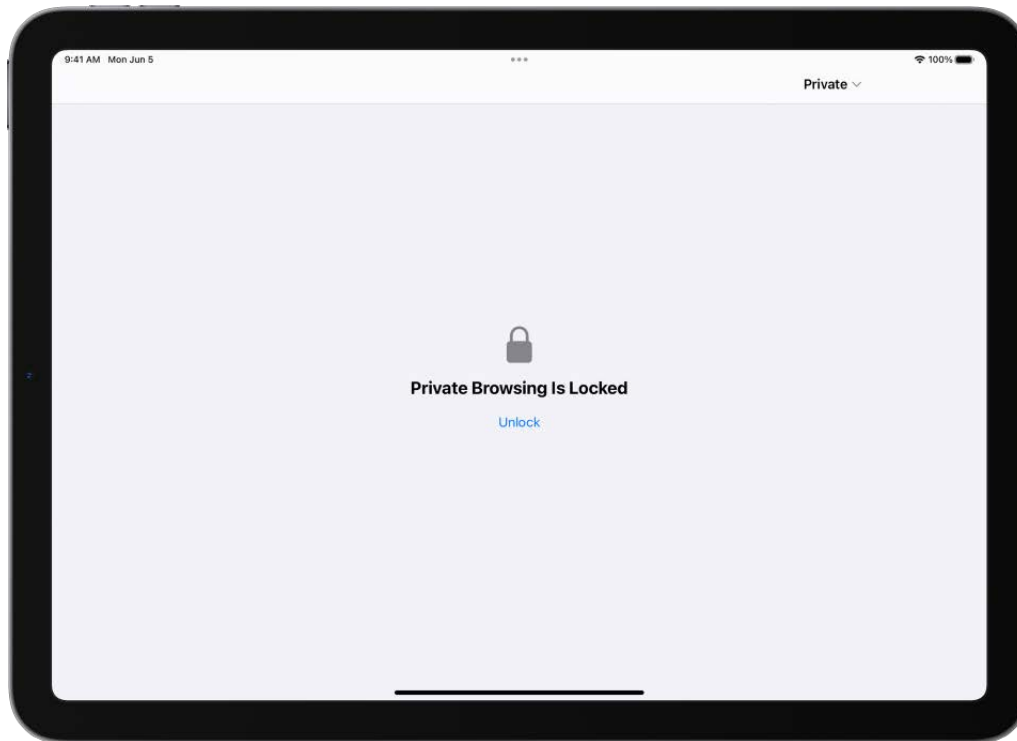
4. Tap Clear History.

Privacy and security

Browse privately in Safari on iPad

You can use Private Browsing Mode, view the Privacy Report, and adjust settings in the Safari app  to keep your browsing activities private and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

COMMENT: #ba #websites



Visit sites privately

You can use Private Browsing to open tabs that don't appear in History on iPad or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tabs in Private Browsing aren't shared with your other Apple devices, even if you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

If you have a passcode set on your iPad, Private Browsing locks when it's not in use. Private Browsing may not lock immediately.

1. Open the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Private.
3. Follow the directions onscreen to unlock Private Browsing.

To exit Private Browsing, tap , then tap a Tab Group. The websites you have open in Private Browsing stay open, and Private Browsing locks.

To prevent Private Browsing from locking, go to Settings  > Safari, then turn off Require Passcode to Unlock Private Browsing, Require Face ID to Unlock Private Browsing (supported models), or Require Touch ID to Unlock Private Browsing (supported models).

Note: Any Safari extensions you have installed that have access to browsing data are automatically turned off in Private Browsing. To turn on an extension in Private Browsing, see [Use extensions](#).

Choose a search engine for Private Browsing

1. Go to Settings  > Safari, then turn off Also Use in Private Browsing.
2. Tap Private Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and from seeing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

Tap **AA** on the right side of the search field, then tap Privacy Report .

Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you [subscribe to iCloud+ on iPad](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPad is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while it prevents network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari. See [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPad](#).

See [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPad](#) to learn how to:

- Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for your iPad.
 - Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.
 - Turn iCloud Private Relay off temporarily.
 - Set the specificity of your IP address location.
-

Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address

If a website relies on IP filtering, monitoring, or rate-limiting, it might require your IP address to be visible. You can turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for that website only.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

1. In Safari, tap **AA** on the left side of the URL field.
2. Tap Show IP Address (if available).

Your IP address remains visible to that website until you leave the website or close its Safari tab. iCloud Private Relay remains on for other websites.

To turn off or pause iCloud Private Relay for all websites, see [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPad](#).

Control privacy and security settings for Safari

Go to Settings  > Safari, then turn any of the following on or off:

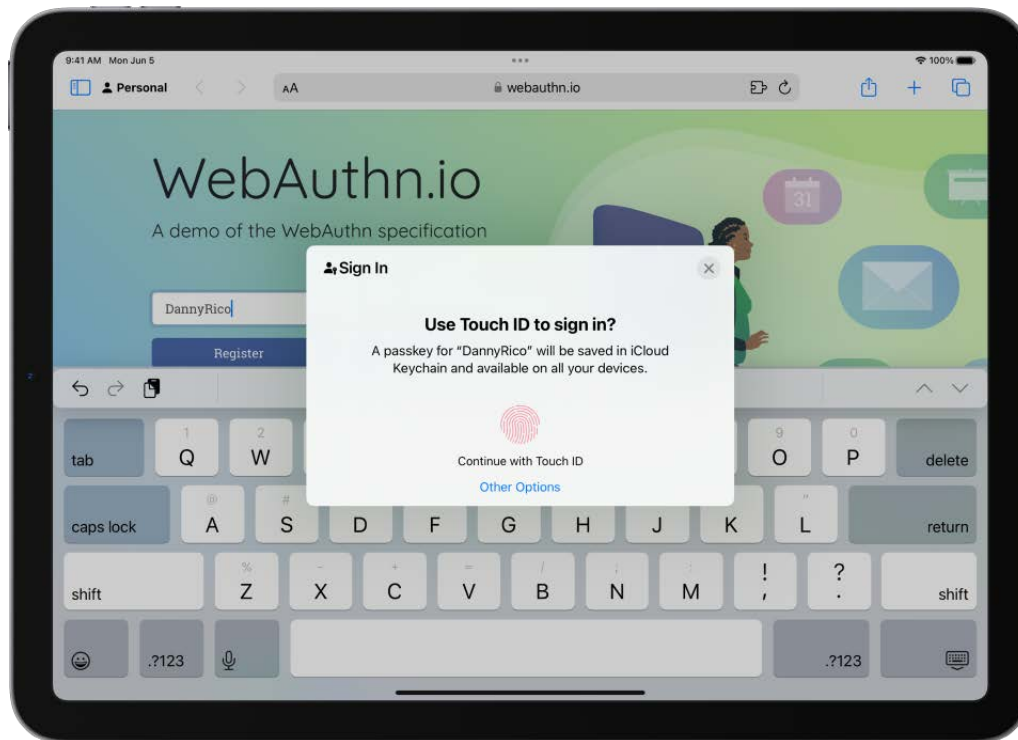
- *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking:* Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.
- *Hide IP address:* Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.
- *Fraudulent Website Warning:* Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned about fraudulent websites.
- *Camera:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your camera without asking you first. Tap Camera, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
- *Microphone:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your microphone without asking you first. Tap Microphone, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
- *Location:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your location without asking you first. Tap Location, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

To set exceptions for a specific website, open the website in the Safari app, tap **AA**, tap Website Settings, then tap the setting you want to change.

Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPad

In the Safari app , you can use Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) to securely sign in to supporting websites. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPad](#).

COMMENT: #ba #websites



Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPad

When you [Subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.

-
1. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email address field.
 2. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.

The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.

3. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap  to see a new suggested address.
 4. Tap Continue.
-

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See [Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings](#).

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPad

The Shortcuts app  lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.

To learn how to automate the best features of your apps, see the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

Stocks

Check stocks on iPad

Use the Stocks app  to track market activity and view the performance of stocks you follow.

 **Siri:** Say something like: "How are the markets doing?" or "How's Apple stock today?" [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Check stocks

1. Open the Stocks app, then tap a ticker symbol in the My Symbols watchlist for more details.
2. To search for a specific stock, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index in the search field at the top of the screen, then tap the symbol in the search results.

Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist

When you first open the Stocks app, a list of ticker symbols appears on the screen; this is called the My Symbols watchlist. You can update and manage the My Symbols watchlist and [create your own watchlists](#).

Tap a symbol to view its most recent price, daily percentage change, market capitalization value, and more.

To make changes to the My Symbols watchlist, do any of the following:

- *Add a symbol:* In the search field, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index. In the search results, tap , then tap Done.
- *Delete a symbol:* Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist.

Note: If you delete a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also deleted from your other watchlists (see [Manage multiple watchlists](#)).

- *Reorder symbols:* Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist, then drag it to a new location.
- *Show currency:* Tap , then tap Show Currency to display the currency the symbol is traded in.
- *Share a symbol:* Swipe left on a symbol in your watchlist, tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

View stock charts, details, and news

You can view interactive charts, performance details, and related news stories about the ticker symbols in your watchlist and the symbols you search for.

 **Tip:** Touch and hold a ticker symbol in your watchlist to see a quick view of the symbol's performance.

Tap a symbol you want to see more details about, then do any of the following:

- *View the performance over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
- *View the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
- *View the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
- *View more details:* Below the chart, view additional stock details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.
- *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPad

You can create your own watchlists in the Stocks app  to organize the stocks you follow according to categories such as tech, energy, or entertainment. Switch between watchlists; edit, update, and delete them; and view them in the Stocks app on your other devices. Any symbols you add to a custom watchlist are also added to the My Symbols watchlist.

Create a new watchlist

1. Tap My Symbols, then tap New Watchlist.
2. Name the watchlist, then tap Save.

To switch between your watchlists, tap My Symbols or the name of the current watchlist you're viewing, then tap the name of the watchlist you want to see.

Add symbols to a watchlist

1. In the search field, enter the name of a ticker symbol, company, fund, or index.
2. Tap , then tap Done.

 **Tip:** You can easily add a symbol that's in one watchlist to another watchlist. Swipe left on the symbol, tap , select a watchlist, then tap Done.

Each symbol you add to a new watchlist is also added to the My Symbols watchlist. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).

Sort symbols in a watchlist

You can choose how the symbols in your watchlists are sorted.

1. Select the watchlist you want to sort, then tap .
2. Tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap one of the following options:
 - Manual
 - Price Change
 - Percentage Change
 - Market Cap
 - Symbol
 - Name

To change the order of the symbols in the watchlist, tap , tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap Ascending or Descending.

Change the value displayed in a watchlist

You can change the value displayed below each symbol's price in a watchlist.

1. Select the watchlist you want to change, then tap .
 2. Tap Watchlist Shows, then tap one of the following options:
 - Price Change
 - Percentage Change
 - Market Cap
-

Remove symbols from a watchlist

To remove a symbol from a watchlist, swipe left on the symbol.

When you remove a symbol from a watchlist that you created, that symbol remains in the My Symbols watchlist. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).

Delete, reorder, and rename watchlists

Tap the name of the watchlist, tap Manage Watchlists, then do any of the following:

- *Delete a watchlist:* Tap  next to the symbol, tap , then tap Delete Watchlist.
 - *Reorder your watchlists:* Touch and hold , then drag the watchlist to a new position.
 - *Rename a watchlist:* Tap , enter a new name, then tap Save.
-

View your watchlist on all your devices

You can view your watchlist on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

- *On iPhone and iPad:* Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, tap Show All, then turn on Stocks.
 - *On macOS 13 and later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click [your name] at the top of the sidebar, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks. (If you don't see your name, click Sign in with your Apple ID to enter your Apple ID or to create one.)
 - *On macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences > Apple ID, select iCloud, then turn on Stocks.
 - *On macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences > iCloud, then turn on Stocks.
-

Read business news in Stocks on iPad

In the Stocks app , you can read business stories that highlight the current news driving the market. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+. (Apple News and Apple News+ content isn't available in all countries or regions.)

To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPad](#).

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Read a story

1. Open Stocks, then tap Business News or a stock symbol in your watchlist to view stories. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).
2. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks:* Tap < or Done in the top-left corner.
- *Save the story to Apple News:* Tap .

Note: To save stories to Apple News, make sure to sign in with your Apple ID, then go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Show All, and turn on News.

- *See more stories from the publication in Apple News:* Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.
- *Change the text size:* Do one of the following, depending on your device and location:
 - Tap AA, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
 - Tap , tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
- *Share the story:* Tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

Note: If you tap an Apple News+ story and you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, tap the subscribe or free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions. To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).

Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See [See news stories chosen just for you](#).

Add earnings reports to your calendar in Stocks on iPad

In the Stocks app , you can see when a company has an upcoming earnings report and add it as an event in the Calendar app.

Add an earnings report event to your calendar

If a stock has an upcoming earnings report, you can add it in the Calendar app and be reminded on the day that it's happening.

1. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or use the search field to search for a symbol.
2. If an earnings report is upcoming, tap Add to Calendar, then tap Add.

The earnings report is saved as an all-day event in the Calendar app. Calendar sends you an event reminder on the day of the earnings report.

Delete an earnings report event from your calendar

1. Open the Stocks app, then tap the ticker symbol in your watchlist or use the search field to search for the symbol.
 2. Tap Edit, then tap Delete Event.
-

Use a Stocks widget on iPad

Use a Stocks widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPad Home Screen. You can choose the size of the Stocks widget and the amount of information the widget displays.

Add a Stocks widget to your iPad Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the iPad Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Tap Stocks on the left side of the gallery.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget types (Watchlist and Symbol) and sizes. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

Change the widget display

After you add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen, you can change the symbol or watchlist that appears in the widget.

1. Touch and hold the Stocks widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit Widget.
3. Depending on the type of widget you chose, Watchlist or Symbol, you can make the following changes:
 - *Change the widget symbol:* Tap the current symbol, then tap the new symbol you want from the watchlist. Or use the search field to search for a new symbol.
 - *Change the widget watchlist:* Tap the name of the current watchlist, then tap the watchlist you want to display.

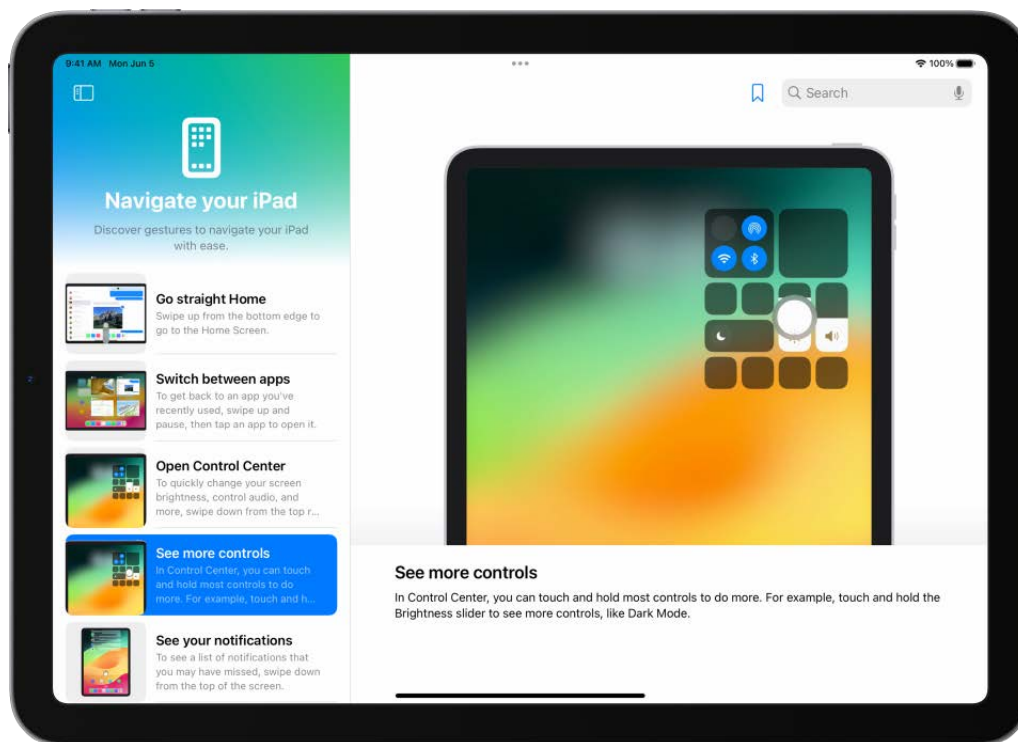
- *Change when news stories appear:* Tap In Off Hours, then choose an option.
- *Show the watchlist name:* Turn on Show Watchlist Name.
- *Show more symbols or additional symbol information:* Turn on Show More Details.

 **Tip:** You can add more than one Stocks widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see updates for different symbols or watchlists.

Stocks widgets are also available for the iPad Lock Screen. See [Create a custom iPad Lock Screen](#).

Get tips on iPad

In the Tips app , see collections of tips that help you get the most from iPad.



Get tips

In the Tips app, you can learn how to personalize your Lock Screen, add widgets, unsend an email, take a screenshot, and much more. New tips are added frequently.

To start learning, tap a collection, then tap a tip.

Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
 2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
 3. Choose options for the location and style of tip notifications, when they should appear, and more.
-

Save tips

You can add tips to your unique Saved tips collection, so you can quickly find them later.

- To add a tip, tap .
 - To view your saved tips, tap  or  until you return to the list of collections, then tap "Saved tips."
 - To remove a tip from your Saved tips collection, tap .
-

Learn more about your other Apple devices

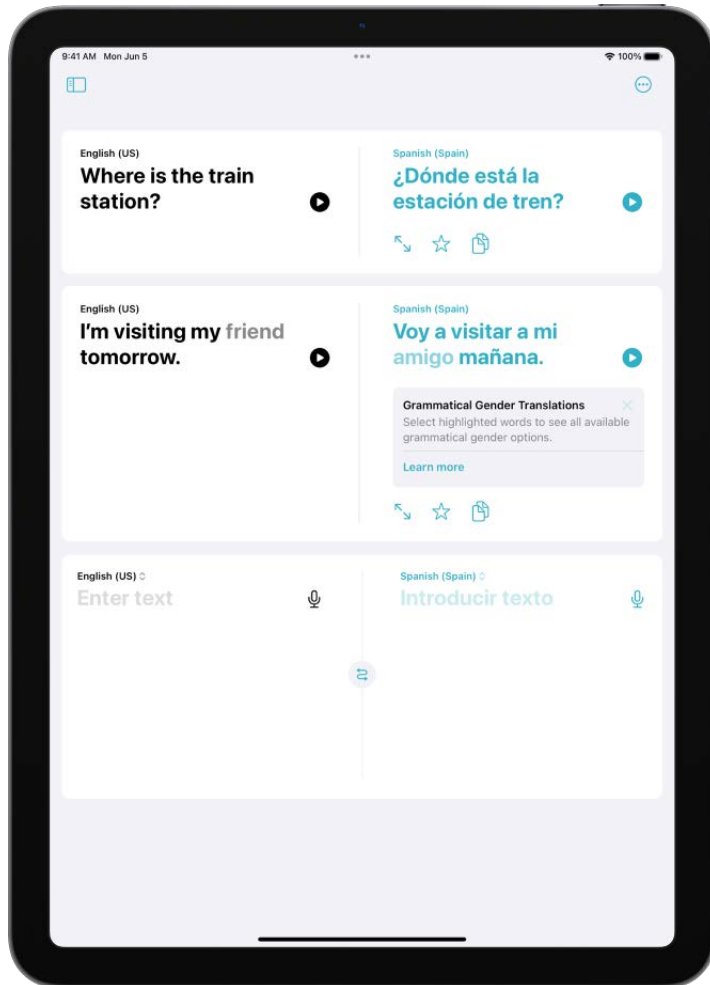
If you have other Apple devices—like an Apple TV, AirPods, or a HomePod—you can read about them in the Tips app.

Scroll to the bottom of the Tips app, then tap the user guide you want to browse.

Translate

Translate text, voice, and conversations on iPad

In the Translate app, you can translate text, voice, and conversations into any supported language. You can also download languages to translate entirely on a device, even without an internet connection.



Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text or your voice

1. Open the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

To swap languages, tap .

3. Tap one of the following:

- *Translate text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Next in the keyboard.

You can also tap Done in the top-right corner of the screen.

- *Translate your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.

Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.

4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

- *Play the audio translation:* Tap .

 **Tip:** Touch and hold  to adjust the playback speed.

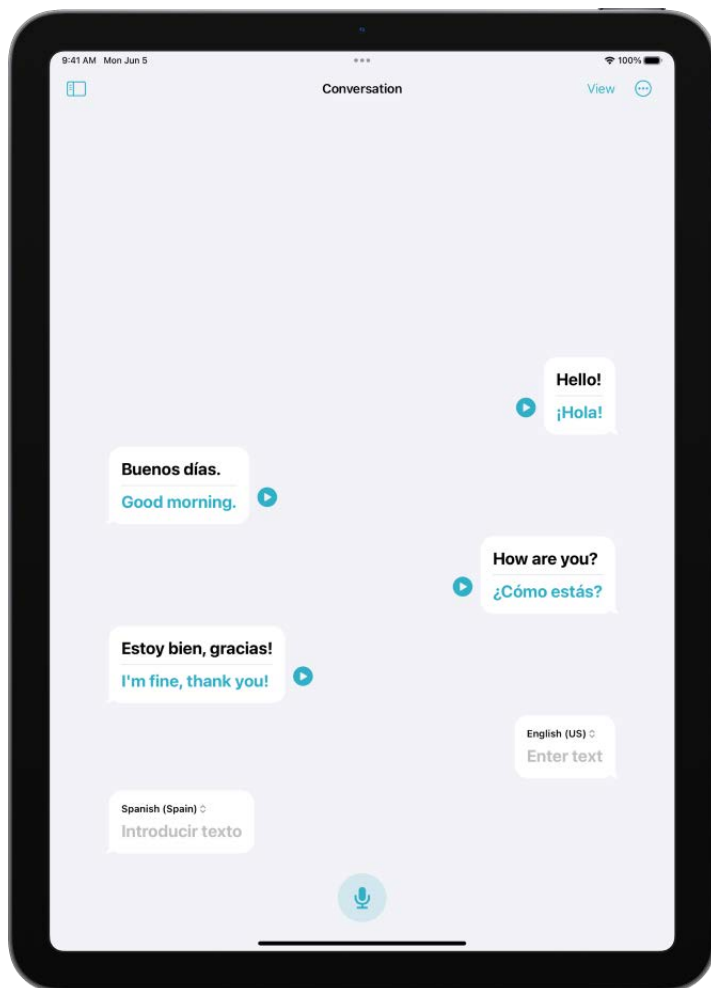
- *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap .
- *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap .
- *Copy the translation:* Tap .

 **Tip:** To view your recent history, swipe the translation down.

Translate a conversation

iPad shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation.

Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.



1. Tap , then tap Conversation.

2. Tap one of the following:

- *Type text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Done.
- *Use your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.

Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.

3. Tap  to hear the audio translation.

To hear audio translations automatically, tap , then tap Play Translations.

 **Tip:** You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap , tap Auto Translate, then tap  to start the conversation. iPad automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face to face, tap View in the top left, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.

Review words with multiple meanings

When translating a word that has several meanings in another language, you can choose the one you want. You can also select feminine or masculine translations for words that have grammatical gender variations.

Note: When gender hasn't been specified, translations automatically default to the gender-neutral form of a word.

1. Open the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next in the keyboard.
3. When available, do any of the following:
 - *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.
 - *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap , then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings  > Translate.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap  next to the languages you want to download.
 - Turn On-Device Mode on.
-

Translate text in apps on iPad

On iPad, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPad, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

3. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:

- *Replace with Translation:* Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).
- *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
- *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
- *Open in Translate:* Do more with the translation in the Translate app.
- *Download Languages:* Download languages for offline translation.
- *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap  to listen to the original text.
- *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap  to listen to the translated text.

Translate text in photos

On supported models, when you view a photo that includes text, tap , touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

Translate text in the Camera app

On supported models with iPadOS 15.1 or later, you can use the Camera app to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Open the Camera app , then position iPad so that the text appears on the screen.
2. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap .
3. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPad

On iPad, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text using the camera view

1. Open the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Camera.
3. Choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
4. Position iPad so the rear camera can translate text around you.

Note: As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.

5. Tap  to pause the view.

You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.

6. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:
 - *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
 - *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
 - *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap  to listen to the original text.
 - *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap  to listen to the translated text.
7. When you're finished, tap .

Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Open the Translate app  on iPad.
 2. Tap , then tap Camera.
 3. Choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
 4. Tap , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.
 5. When you're finished, tap .
-

Share and save translated text

After translating text from the camera view or a photo, tap , then do any of the following:

- *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.
 - *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.
-

TV

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPad

In the Apple TV app , you can subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels. Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

Subscribe to Apple TV channels like Paramount+, Starz, and others to get the shows you want, without downloading any apps.

A subscription gives you access to content on demand on iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices. You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Note: Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to Apple TV+

1. Tap Apple TV+ in the sidebar, then tap the subscription button.
2. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to MLS Season Pass

1. Tap MLS Season Pass in the sidebar, then tap the subscription button.
 2. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps

1. Tap Store in the sidebar, then scroll down to the Add Channels & Apps row.
2. Swipe left to browse, then tap an item.
3. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Your channels and apps appear in the Channels & Apps row in the Home tab across all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials at the bottom left of the sidebar, tap Connected Apps, then tap the button next to the streaming app to disconnect it.

Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV channels

1. In the sidebar, tap your picture or initials at the bottom left.
2. Tap Manage Subscriptions.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#), or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPad

You can add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app  and watch shows and movies on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

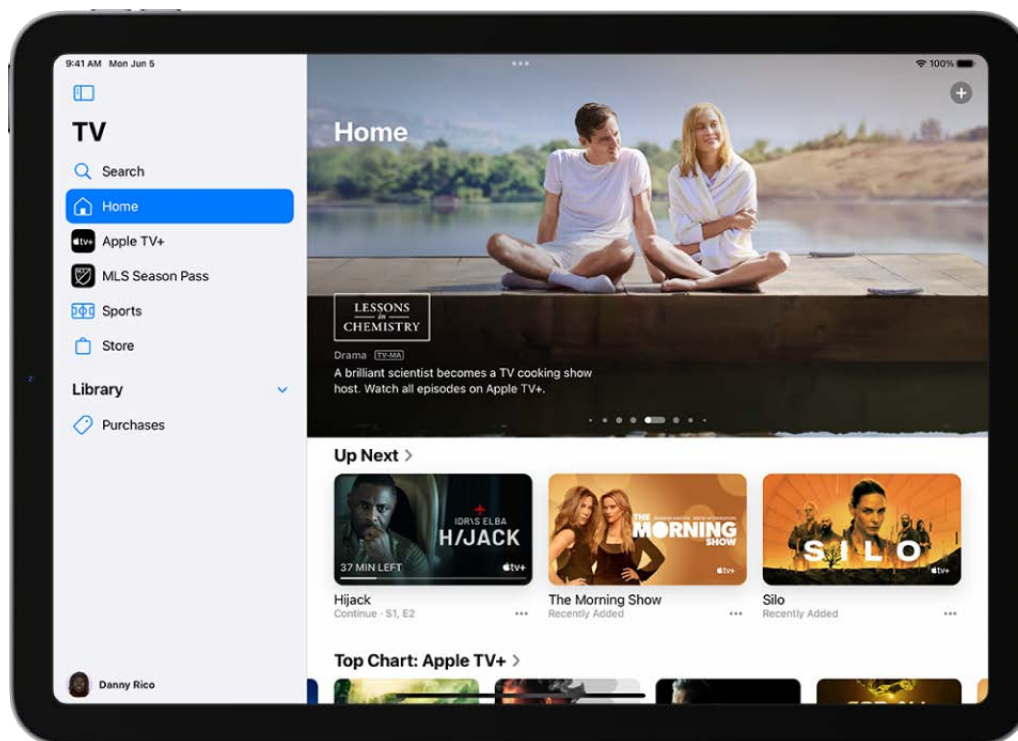
1. Go to Settings  > TV Provider.
2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

Get shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPad

The Apple TV app  brings your favorite shows, movies, and sports together in one place. Quickly find and watch your favorites, pick up where you left off with Up Next, or discover something new—personalized just for you.

COMMENT: #ba #tv-movies // Lessons in Chemistry, Hijack, The Morning Show, and Silo cleared until summer 2024 (M. Mason/L. O'Rourke, 1/22/24) //



Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Discover shows and movies

In the Apple TV app, tap Home, then do any of the following:

- *Get recommendations:* Get video previews of personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.
 - *See movies, shows, and episodes sent by friends in Messages:* Scroll down to the Shared with You row. See [Share content in Messages on iPad](#).
-

Browse channels and apps

1. Open the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
 2. Tap Home in the sidebar, scroll down to the Channels & Apps row, then swipe right to browse either of the following:
 - *Channels & Apps:* Directly access all the channels you've subscribed to or apps you've connected to the Apple TV app.
 - *More to Explore:* Find new channels or apps to subscribe to or watch.
 3. Tap an item to open it.
-

Use the Up Next queue

In the Up Next row, you can find titles you recently added, rented, or purchased, catch the next episode in a series you've been watching, or resume what you're watching from the moment you left off.

Do any of the following:

- *Add an item to Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Up Next.
 - *Remove an item from Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Remove from Up Next.
 - *Continue watching on another device:* You can see your Up Next queue in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, or supported smart TV where you're signed in with your Apple ID.
-

Browse Apple TV+

The Apple TV+ tab gives you easy access to Apple TV+, a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

Tap Apple TV+ in the sidebar, then do any of the following:

- *See what's up next:* In the Up Next on Apple TV+ row, find titles you recently added, play the next episode in a series, or continue watching where you left off.

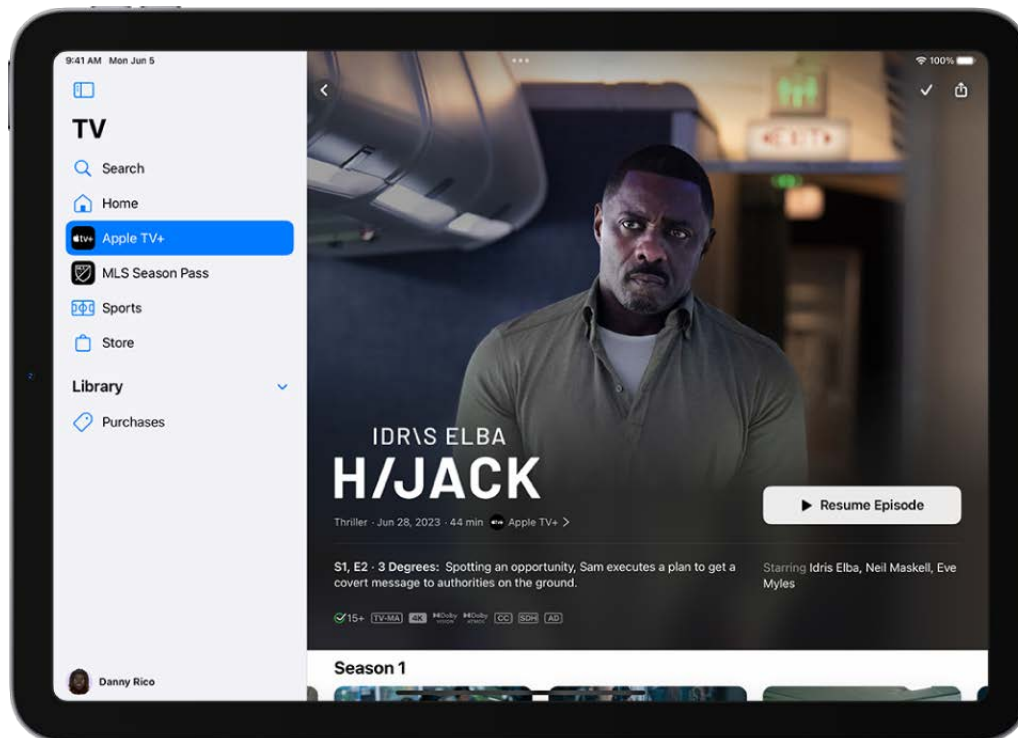
- *Browse a collection:* Swipe left on the collection or tap > to see all items.
- *See descriptions and ratings:* Tap an item.

Search for shows, movies, and more

Tap Search, then enter what you're looking for in the search field. You can search by title, sport, team, cast member, Apple TV channel, or topic (such as "car chase").

Stream or download content

COMMENT: #ba #tv-movies // Hijack cleared until summer 2024 (M. Mason/L. O'Rourke, 1/22/24) //



Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels play in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app.

1. Tap an item to see its details.
 2. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
 - *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple ID accounts) or Subscribe.
 - *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.
 - *Download:* Tap ⬇️. You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPad isn't connected to the internet.
-

Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Tap Store, then choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
 - *Buy*: Purchased items are added to your library.
 - *Rent*: When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.
 - *Pre-order*: When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPad.
2. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order, as applicable.

You can [find your purchases and rentals in your library](#) and play them in the Apple TV app.

Watch sports

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPad

In the Apple TV app, the Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events (not available in all countries or regions).

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, or browse upcoming games and add them to Up Next.

Explore sports

1. Open the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - Browse live and upcoming games.
 - Scroll down to browse football, baseball, basketball, and more.
3. To filter by sport, scroll down to the Browse row, then tap a sport.

Watch a live game

1. Open the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then tap a live game.
3. Tap Watch or Open In, then choose an app.

You can also scroll down to How to Watch, then choose an app.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See [Access features from the iPad Lock Screen](#).

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings  > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPad

In the Apple TV app , you can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Up Next and [receive notifications](#) when they're about to play.

When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News and other supported apps. If you've already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac signed in with the same Apple ID, you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

Note: My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

Follow your favorite teams

1. Tap Sports in the sidebar.
2. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Follow Your Teams.
3. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.
4. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap  next to a team to follow it.
5. When you're finished, tap Done.

Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you've set up My Sports.

Tap Sports in the sidebar, then tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

- *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap  next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.
- *Unfollow teams:* Tap  next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Remove, then tap Done.

Watch Major League Soccer with MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app on iPad

When you subscribe to MLS Season Pass in the Apple TV app , you can watch every match of the Major League Soccer season, the entire playoffs, and Leagues Cup all in one place, with no blackouts.

You can [watch multiple matches at the same time](#), follow your favorite MLS clubs using My Sports (not available in all countries or regions) and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last

season, and more.

When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Up Next.

Note: MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

Browse and watch with MLS Season Pass

1. Open the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap MLS Season Pass in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - *Explore featured matches, pregame and postgame shows, and more:* Scroll to a category row.
 - *Follow your favorite MLS clubs in My Sports:* Tap Follow your Clubs. See [Follow your favorite teams with My Sports](#).
 - *Browse matches, club profiles, player profiles, and more for a particular club:* Scroll down to the All Clubs row, then tap a club.
3. To start watching, tap an event or show.

Note: Some events and shows require a subscription. If you haven't subscribed to MLS Season Pass, tap Subscribe, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Add or remove an event from Up Next

1. Open the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
 2. Tap MLS Season Pass in the sidebar, then tap an event.
 3. Do either of the following:
 - *Add the item to Up Next:* Tap .
 - *Remove the item from Up Next:* Tap .
-

Watch multiple live sports streams in the Apple TV app on iPad

In the Apple TV app  on iPad, you can play up to four simultaneous streams, including Major League Soccer matches, Friday Night Baseball games, and select MLS and MLB live shows.

Note: Multiview is available on iPadOS 17.2 or later; a subscription to MLS Season Pass (for MLS) or Apple TV+ (for Friday Night Baseball) is also required. Multiple game viewing options are subject to scheduling.

Watch multiple live sports streams

1. Open the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then [start a live game](#).
3. While you're watching a Friday Night Baseball game or MLS match, tap the screen to [show the playback controls](#), then do one of the following:
 - Tap  at the top left, then tap a game below Add More.
 - Tap Live Sports or Up Next in the bottom left, touch and hold a live game, then tap Watch in Multiview.
4. While in Multiview, do any of the following:
 - *Add a stream:* Swipe up from the bottom, then tap a stream in the Add More row.
 - *Move streams:* Touch and hold a stream, then drag it to a new position.
 - *Change the audio to a different stream:* Tap a stream to focus on it.

Note: The Sound button  appears in the bottom-right corner of the stream playing audio.
 - *Watch a stream in full screen:* Tap a stream, then tap . Tap  to return to Multiview.
 - *Delete a stream from Multiview:* Tap a stream, then tap .
 - *Exit Multiview:* Tap . Tap  to return to Multiview.

Change the layout of the sports streams

To change the layout of the streams in the grid, do any of the following:

- *When two streams are selected:* Tap  at the top right to view the streams in a 70/30 ratio. Tap  again to view the streams at the same size.
- *When four streams are selected:* Tap  at the top right to view the streams in a 70/30 ratio (one stream at 70 percent, three streams at 30 percent). Tap  again to view the streams at the same size.

Control playback in the Apple TV app on iPad

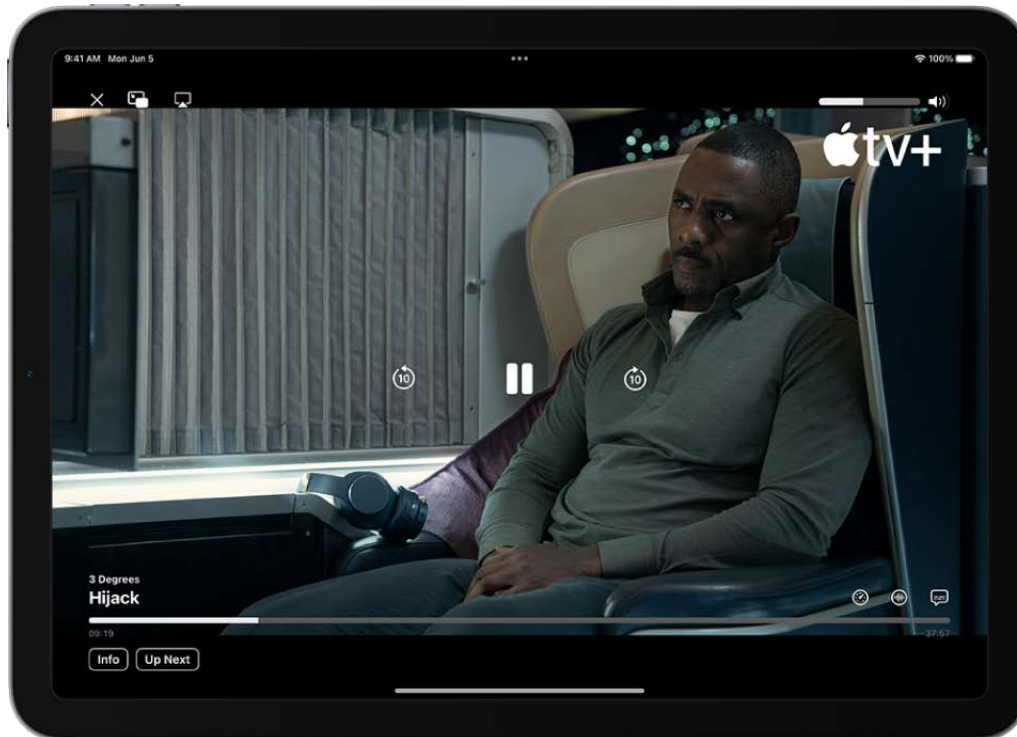
In the Apple TV app , you can use the playback controls to play, pause, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see [Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPad](#).

Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.

COMMENT: #ba #tv-movies // Hijack cleared until fall 2024 (M. Mason, 7/12/23) //



Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Change the playback speed
	Change the language
	Display subtitles and closed captions
	Stream the video to other devices
	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Stop playback

About the Info, Up Next, and Live Sports buttons

While you're watching a show, movie, or live game, tap the screen to show the playback controls, then do any of the following:

- *Learn more about what you're watching:* Tap Info.
- *View titles you've added to Up Next:* Tap Up Next.
- *View live and upcoming sports events:* Tap Live Sports.

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPad

In the Apple TV app , your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you [use Family Sharing](#), you can also view purchases made by family members.

Browse your library

Below the Library heading in the sidebar, tap Movies, TV Shows, or Genres.

Watch a movie you rented

1. Below the Library heading in the sidebar, tap Rentals, then tap a movie.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Play:* Tap . The time remaining in the rental period is shown.
 - *Download:* Tap  to watch the item later when iPad isn't connected to the internet.

Share purchases made by family members

If you [use Family Sharing](#), you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

Remove a downloaded item

1. Below the Library heading in the sidebar, tap Downloaded.
2. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPad doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPad again later.

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPad

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app . You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations and choose what appears in the Apple TV app, including live sports scores and items in Up Next.

Change streaming and download options

1. Go to Settings  > TV.

2. Choose streaming options:

- *Use Cellular Data:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
- *Cellular:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Choose High Quality or Automatic.
- *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.

High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.

3. Choose download options:

- *Use Cellular Data:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.
- *Cellular:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.
- *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.

High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.

- *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.

The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

Change how your viewing history is used

By default, what you watch on your iPad affects your personalized recommendations and Up Next queue on all your devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* In the sidebar, tap your picture or initials at the bottom left, then tap Clear Play History.
 - *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to Settings  > TV, then turn off Use Play History.
-

Change your device preferences

1. Go to Settings  > TV.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - *Show or hide live sports scores:* Turn off Show Sports Scores.
 - *Use your viewing history for personalized recommendations and Up Next:* Turn on Use Play History.
 - *Choose the art you want to see in Up Next:* Tap Up Next Display, then tap Still Frame to see paused images from what you're watching, or Poster Art to show main title images for shows or movies.
 - *Prevent the next episode or trailer from automatically playing:* Turn off Auto-Play Next Video.
-

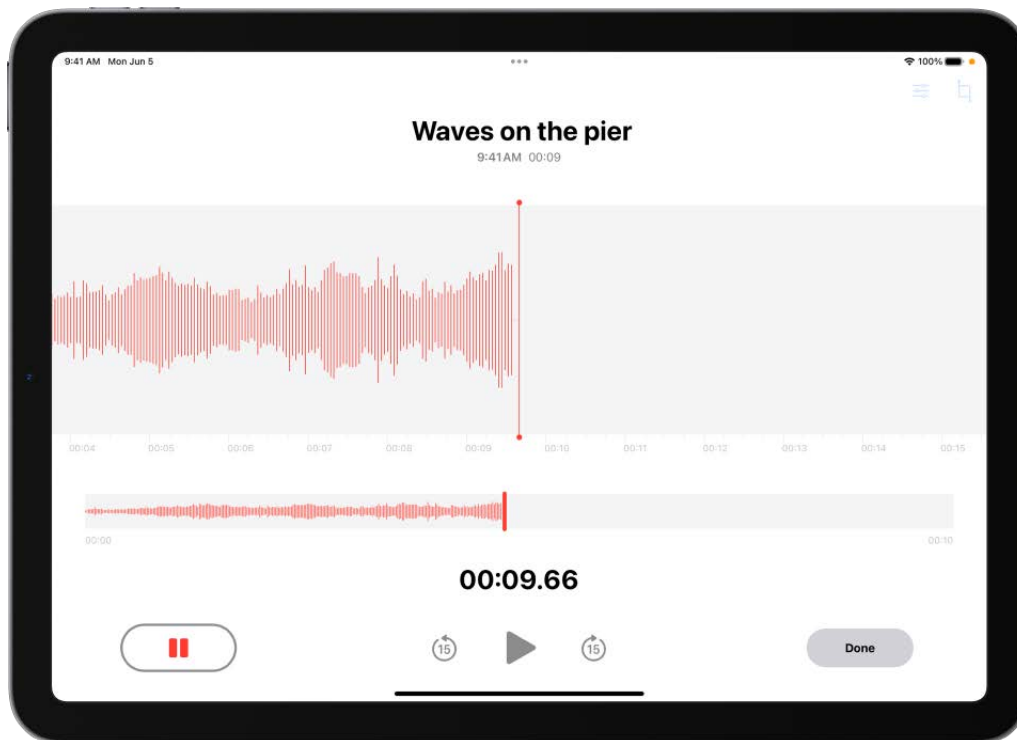
Voice Memos

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

With the Voice Memos app , you can use iPad as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recordings [appear and update automatically](#) on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.



Make a basic recording

1. To begin recording, tap .

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

2. Tap Done to finish recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit a recording in Voice Memos](#).

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. To begin recording, tap .

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

2. Tap  to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.

3. To review your recording, tap .

To change where playback begins, drag the playhead right or left across the small waveform at the bottom of the screen before you tap .

4. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit a recording in Voice Memos](#).

Mute the start and stop tones

While recording, use the iPad volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app, as long as it doesn't play audio on your device. If the app starts playing or recording sound, Voice Memos stops recording.

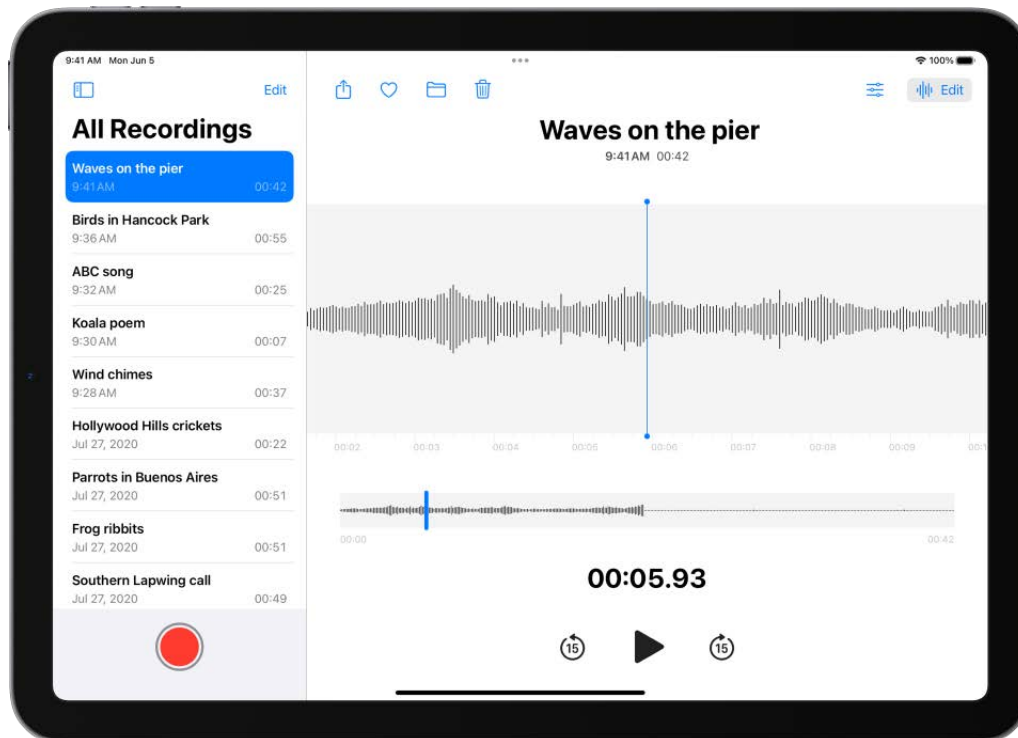
1. While recording, you can go to the Home Screen and open another app.
 2. To return to Voice Memos, tap the orange icon at the top of the screen.
-

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, but you can record stereo using an external stereo microphone that works with iPad. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPad" or "Works with iPad" logo.

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

In the Voice Memos app , tap a recording and use the playback controls to listen to it.



Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 15 seconds
	Skip forward 15 seconds

 **Tip:** While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play.
2. Tap , then drag the slider toward the tortoise  for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit  for a faster speed.]
3. Tap , then tap  to play the recording.

Note: Changing the playback speed doesn't change the recording itself, only how fast it plays.

Enhance a recording

When playing a recording, you can enhance it to reduce background noise and echo.

1. Tap the recording you want to enhance.
2. Tap , then turn on Enhance Recording.
3. Tap , then tap  to play the recording.

Note: Turning on Enhance Recording doesn't change the recording itself, only how it sounds when you play it.

Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Tap the recording you want to play.
2. Tap , then turn on Skip Silence.
3. Tap , then tap  to play the recording.

Note: Turning on Skip Silence doesn't change the recording itself, only how it sounds when you play it.

Turn off the playback options

To return all the playback options to their original settings, tap , then tap Reset.

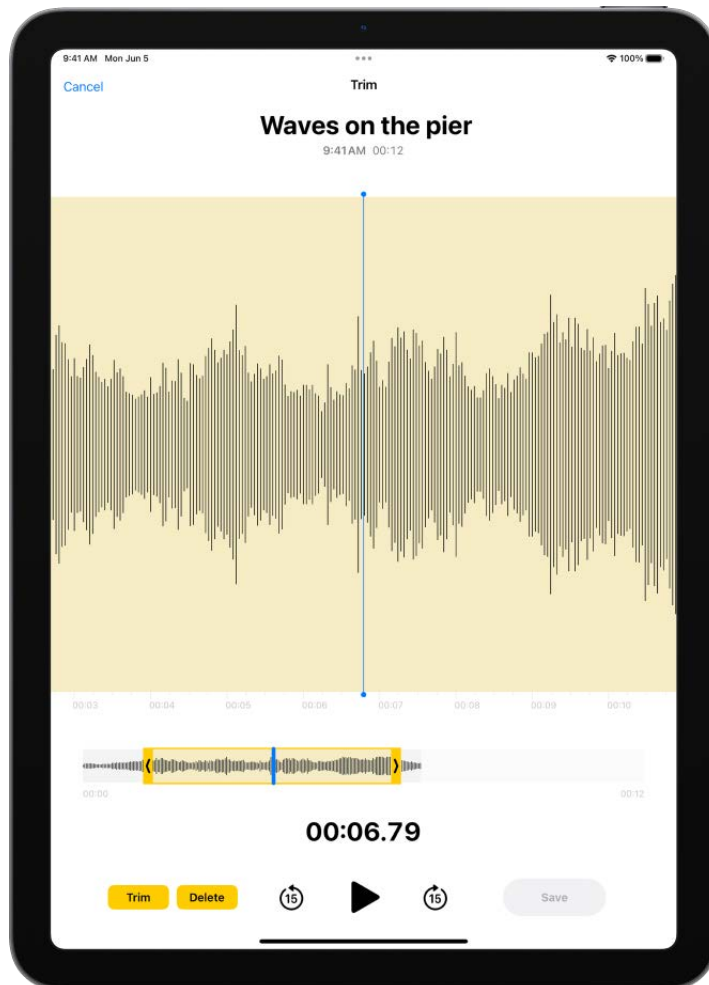
Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

In the Voice Memos app , you can use the editing tools to fine-tune your recordings. You can remove parts you don't want, record over parts, or replace an entire recording.

Trim the excess

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, then tap Edit at the top right.
2. Tap  at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.



To check your selection, tap .

3. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.
4. Tap Save, then tap Done.

Replace a recording

1. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, then tap Edit at the top right.
2. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.

3. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).

Tap  to pause; tap Resume to continue.

4. To check your recording, tap .
5. Tap Done to save the changes.

Delete a recording

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap .
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap Delete.

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings  > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
 - *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
 - *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPad

With the Voice Memos app  and iCloud, your audio recordings appear and are kept up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in with the same Apple ID and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS*: Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Show All, then turn on Voice Memos.
 - *macOS 13*: Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click [your name] at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud on the right. Click iCloud Drive, click Options, click Documents, select Voice Memos, then click Done. (If you don't see your name at the top of the sidebar, click Sign in with your Apple ID to enter your Apple ID or to create one.)
 - *macOS 10.15–12.5*: Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Apple ID. Click iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options next to iCloud Drive, click Documents, then select Voice Memos.
-

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPad

In the Voice Memos app , you can mark recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders—folders that automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites

Do one of the following:

- In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, then tap  above the waveform on the right.
- Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap Move, then tap favorites.

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
2. Select one or more recordings, then tap Move.
3. If you want to create a new folder for the recordings, tap , then type a name for the folder.

4. Tap the folder where you want to store the selected recordings.

To view your folders, tap ; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings above the folders.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Tap  to go to the list of folders.
 2. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:
 - *Delete a folder:* Tap  next to the folder, then tap .
 - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag  next to any folder.
 3. Tap Done.
-

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can search for your recordings in the Voice Memos app , and rename any recording.

Search for a recording

1. Swipe down from the middle of the list of recordings to reveal the search field.
 2. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.
-

Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security.

To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

In the Voice Memos app , you can share a recording with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, and more.

Share a recording

1. Tap the recording you want to share, then tap .
2. Choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .

Share more than one recording

1. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.
 2. Tap , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .
-

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

In the Voice Memos app , you can duplicate a recording, which is useful when you need another version of it. You can make changes to the copy, save it, and [give it a new name](#).

Tap a recording, tap  above the waveform, then tap Duplicate.

The duplicate appears right below the original version in the list and has “copy” added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

Weather

Check the weather on iPad

Use the Weather app  on your iPad to check the weather conditions in your current location. View the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.

Note: Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To make sure Location Services is turned on, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather. Turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast in your current location.



Check the local forecast and conditions

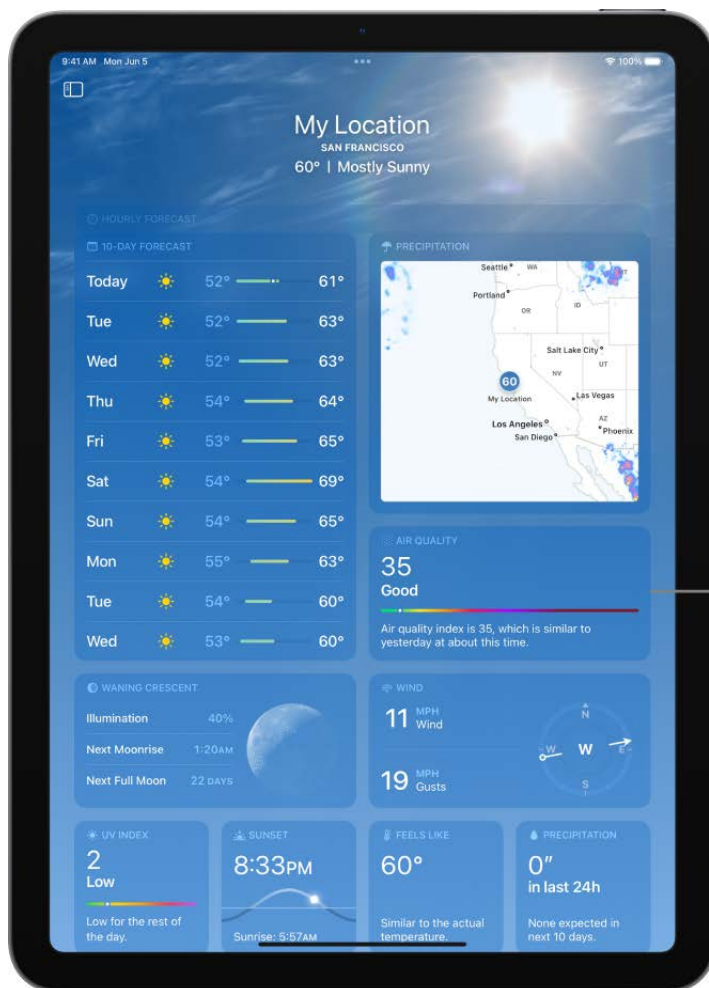
When you open the Weather app  on your iPad, the details for your current location are shown. If you don't see them, tap , then tap My Location.

Swipe up to view weather details such as:

- *Hourly forecast:* Swipe the hourly display left or right.

 **Tip:** Tap the hourly forecast to see the hourly temperature forecast, chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more. Tap  to change the displayed weather condition. Swipe left to see the same information for the days ahead.

- *10-day forecast:* View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.
- *Severe weather alerts:* View updates for weather events such as winter storms and flash floods (not available in all countries or regions). Tap the alert to read the full government-issued alert.



Tap a weather detail for more information.

- *News:* Read a news article when there's a story relevant to the weather in that location (not available in all countries or regions).
- *Maps:* View a map that displays the temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind conditions in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, air quality, and wind. See [View weather maps on iPad](#).

- *Air quality:* View air quality information; tap to view details about health information and pollutants (not available in all countries or regions).

Note: The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.

- *Additional weather details:* View additional weather information such as the UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more. Tap a weather detail for more features and information specific to that detail.



Tip: The Averages weather detail shows how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average; tap it for additional information.

To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article [Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app](#).

Customize the weather units

You can change the unit of measurement for displaying weather data, such as Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, or miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
2. Tap , tap Units, then do any of the following:
 - *Change temperature units:* Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or "Use system setting."
 - *Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:* Tap the arrows next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

Note: Visibility distance refers to how far away you can see objects like buildings and hills.

Send a report about the weather

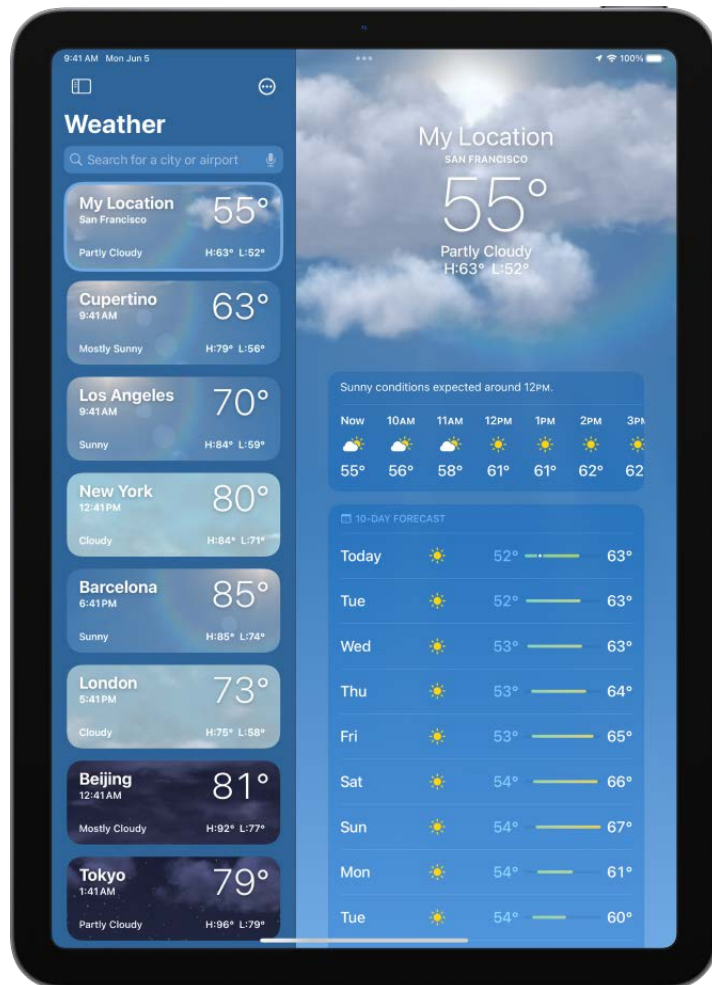
You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
2. Tap , then tap Report an Issue.
3. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your Apple ID.

Check the weather in other locations on iPad

Use the Weather app  to check the weather in other locations. You can also create a saved weather list to quickly check the forecast in places that are important to you.



Check the weather in another location

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
2. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter a city, neighborhood, or location.
3. Tap the location in the search results to view the forecast.
4. Tap Cancel to close the forecast, then tap Cancel to clear the search results.

Note: Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.

Add a location to your weather list

You can add locations to the weather list to quickly check the weather in places important to you.

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
2. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the city or the airport code that you want to add to your list.
3. Tap the location in the search results, then tap Add.

To check the weather in locations you added to your weather list, swipe the iPad screen left or right, or tap , then tap a location.

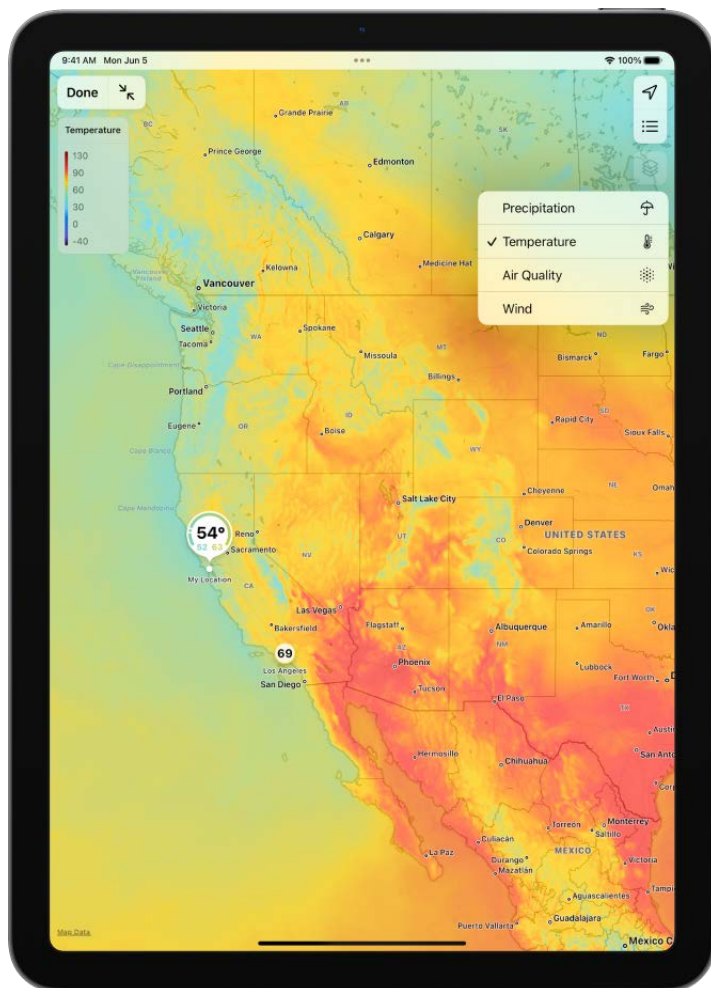
Delete and rearrange locations in your weather list

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
2. Do either of the following:
 - *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap . Or, tap , then tap Edit List.
 - *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap , then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

View weather maps on iPad

You can use the Weather app  to view maps that display the precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.



View an enlarged weather map

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the weather map to enlarge it.

When the map is enlarged, it stays pinned to the top of the screen in portrait view and to the side of the screen in landscape view.

Change the map display

1. While viewing an enlarged map, do any of the following to adjust the display:

- *Change the map display to temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind:* Tap .

While viewing the precipitation map, tap  to change the view between Next-Hour Forecast and 12-Hour Forecast (not available in all countries or regions).

- *Enlarge the map:* Tap .

While the map is enlarged, you can tap , then select a location to jump to a different location in your weather list.

- *Move the map:* Touch the screen and drag your finger.
- *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
- *Return to your current location:* Tap .
- *Add a location to your weather list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location.

2. Tap Done to close the map.

Manage weather notifications on iPad

You can receive notifications from the Weather app  when precipitation and certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations in your weather list (not available in all countries or regions).

Turn on weather notifications

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather, then tap Always.
2. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.
3. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
4. Tap , then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

5. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
6. Tap Done.

Turn on weather notifications for locations in your weather list

1. Open the Weather app  on your iPad, then tap  or turn your iPad to landscape view to display the sidebar.
2. Tap , then tap Notifications.

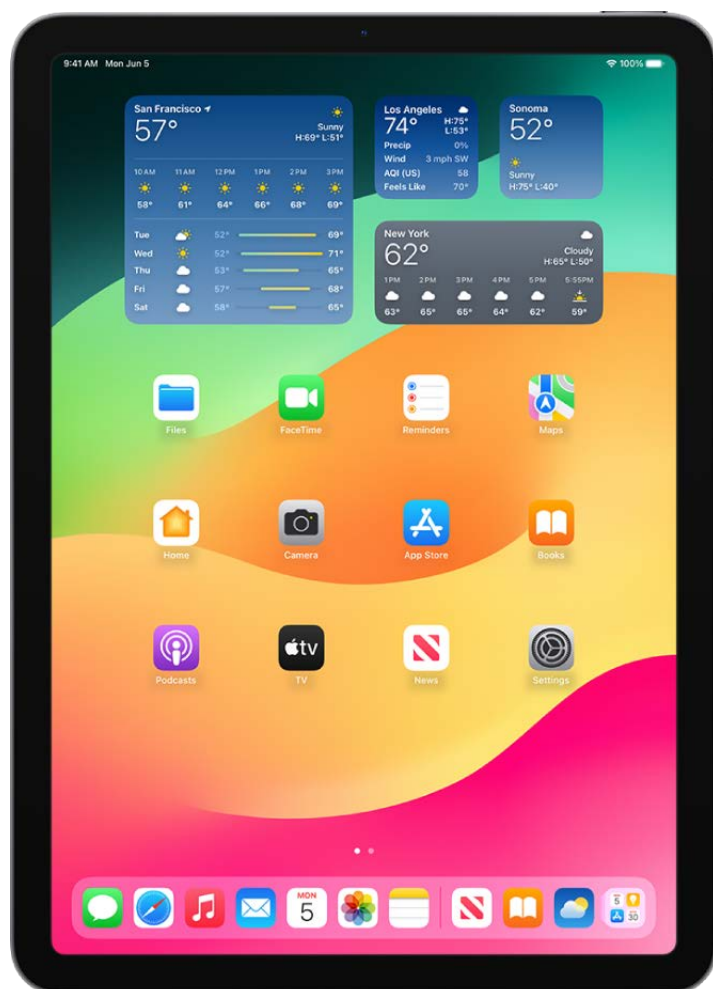
If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

3. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).
4. Tap Done.

Note: Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

Use Weather widgets on iPad

Use Weather widgets to check the forecast and other weather conditions at a glance on your iPad Home Screen. You can choose from a variety of widget sizes and displays. See [Add a widget to your Home Screen](#).



 **Tip:** You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPad Home Screen.

1. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit widget.
3. Tap My Location, then tap the new location you want to display.

Note: Location options are generated from your [weather list](#).

4. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPad Home Screen.
-

Weather widgets are also available for the iPad Lock Screen. See [Create a custom iPad Lock Screen](#).

Learn the weather icons on iPad

The icons in the Weather app  indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear / Mostly clear
	Partly cloudy
	Haze
	Fog
	Windy / Breezy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm
	Rain
	Heavy rain
	Drizzle / Freezing drizzle
	Snow



Heavy snow / Blizzard



Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix



Clear / Mostly clear (night)



Partly cloudy (night)



Drizzle (night)

Siri

Use Siri on iPad

Get everyday tasks done with just your voice. Use Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, and more.



Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPad, do any of the following:

- *If you want to activate Siri with your voice:* Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, tap "Listen for," then choose "Hey Siri" or "Siri" (if you have that option).

Note: The option to say just "Siri" is available on supported iPad models in some languages and regions.

- *If you want to activate Siri with a button:* Go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on Press Home for Siri (on an iPad with a Home button), or Press Top Button for Siri (on other iPad models).

To change additional Siri settings, see [Change Siri settings on iPad](#).

Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

Say “Siri” or “Hey Siri” then ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like “Hey Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m.” or “Siri, what’s the weather for today?”

 **Tip:** To prevent iPad from responding to “Siri” or “Hey Siri,” place your iPad face down, or go to Settings  > Siri & Search, tap “Listen for,” then choose Off.

You can also activate Siri with your voice while you’re wearing supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button and iPad is muted, Siri responds silently. To change this behavior, see [Change how Siri responds](#).

1. Do one of the following:

- *On an iPad with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
- *On other iPad models:* Press and hold the top button.
- *With EarPods with Remote and Mic:* (Sold separately) Press and hold the center or call button.

2. Ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like “What’s 18 percent of 225?” or “Set the timer for 3 minutes.”

You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See [Set Up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Make back-to-back requests

After you activate Siri, you can make back-to-back requests without reactivating it. (Available on supported iPad models with iPadOS 17 in some countries or regions.)

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

To override a request, interrupt Siri while it is speaking.

For example, say “Hey Siri, what’s the weather like in San Francisco? What about Cupertino?”

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.
- *If you aren't making back-to-back requests:* Tap , then repeat your request in a different way.
- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."
- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

 **Tip:** To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPad models in some countries and regions.)

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

More about Siri

Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#) and the [Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website](#).

For some requests, iPad must be [connected to the internet](#). Cellular charges may apply.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPad, see [this Apple Support article](#).

Find out what Siri can do on iPad

Use Siri on iPad to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

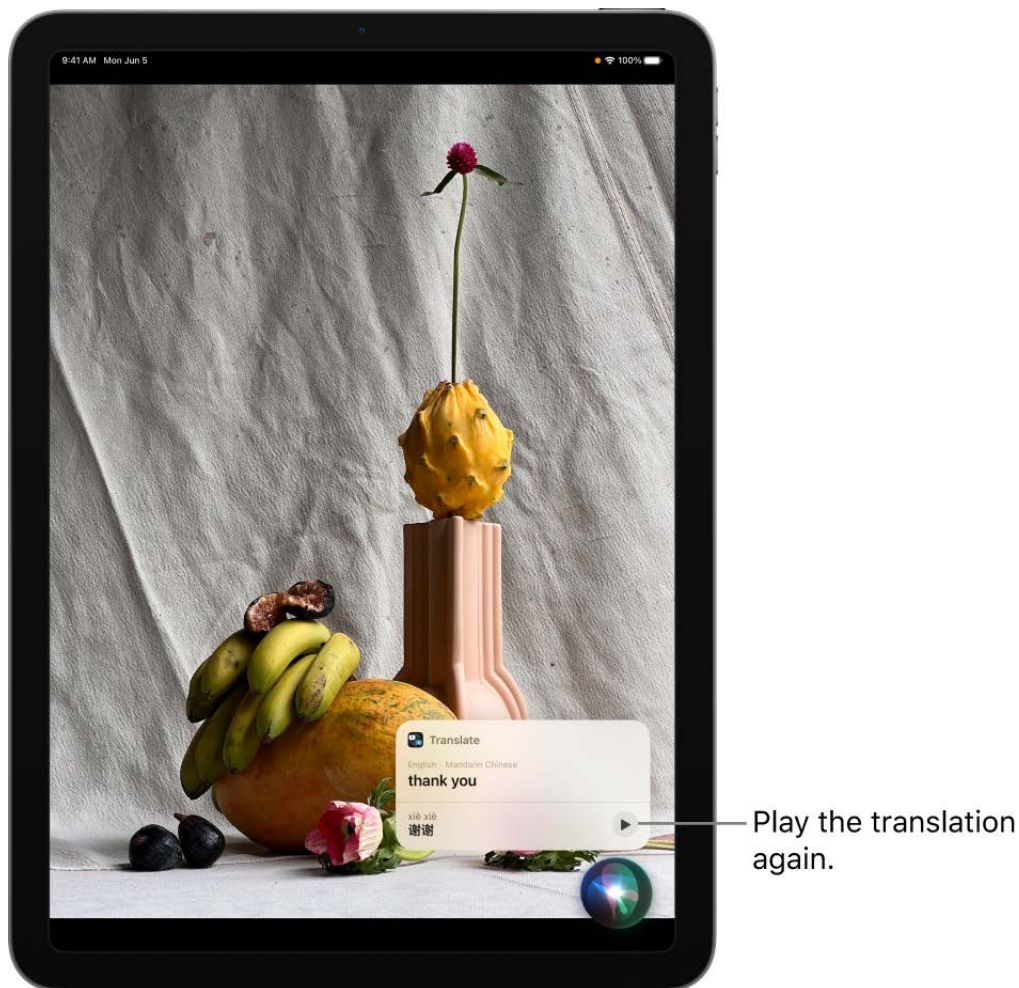
Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also discover Siri capabilities on your iPad and in apps by asking "What can I do here?"

Use Siri to answer questions

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Get Siri's attention, then say something like:

- "What causes a rainbow?"
- "What does a cat sound like?"
- "What's the derivative of cosine x?"
- "How do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"

COMMENT: #ba #siri #queries



Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. With Siri activated, say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" to create an event in Calendar.
- "Add artichokes to my groceries list" to add an item to Reminders.
- "Send a message to PoChun saying love you heart emoji" to send a text using Messages.
- "What's my update?" to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

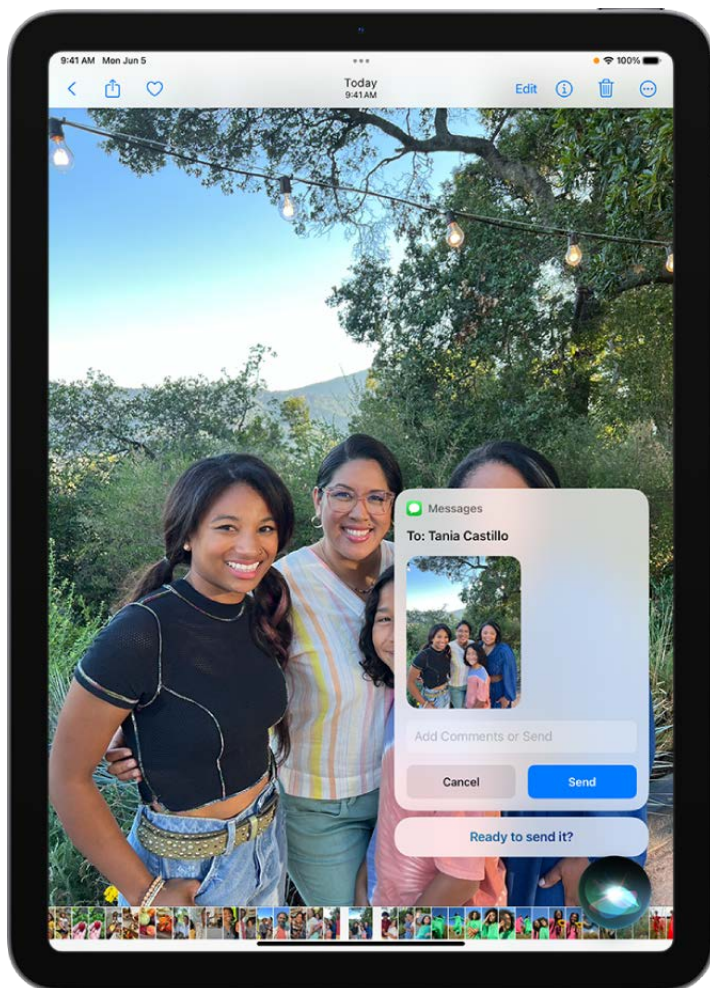
For more examples, see any of the following:

- [Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPad](#)
- [Use Siri to play music on iPad](#)
- [Control your home using Siri on iPad](#)
- [Get travel directions on iPad](#)
- [Add Siri Shortcuts on iPad](#)

Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with [people in your contacts](#).

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, activate Siri and say something like "Send this to mom" to create a new message with the photo.



Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- [Siri Suggestions on iPad](#)
- [Tell Siri about yourself on iPad](#)
- [Change Siri settings on iPad](#)

You can also [use accessibility features with Siri](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#).

Tell Siri about yourself on iPad

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like “Give me driving directions home” and “FaceTime mom.”

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts , then [fill out your contact information](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts , then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap “add field,” select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See [Edit contacts on iPad](#).

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”

COMMENT: [#ba](#) [#siri](#) [#queries](#)

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings , then sign in with the same Apple ID.

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don’t want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPad and your other devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, then turn off Siri.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See [Control the location information you share on iPad](#).

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPad

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages  on supported headphones. You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say “Hey Siri.”

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > Announce Calls, then choose an option.
2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say “yes” to accept the call or “no” to decline it.

Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see [Set up a Focus on iPad](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPad

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice.

Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See [Use Siri on iPad](#).

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see [Change Siri settings on iPad](#).

Siri Suggestions on iPad

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as confirm an appointment or send an email, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPad recently. If you tell a friend you're on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* (iPad Air 2 and later) Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then select an app.
 2. Turn settings on or off.
-

Change where Siri Suggestions appear

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Allow Notifications
 - Show in App Library & Spotlight
 - Show When Sharing
 - Show When Listening
-

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you’re signed in with the same Apple ID. As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don’t want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See [Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website](#).

Change Siri settings on iPad

You can change the voice for Siri, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see [Use Siri on iPad](#). To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see [Siri Suggestions on iPad](#).

Change when Siri responds

You can customize if Siri responds to your voice or a button press. You can also choose what language Siri responds to.

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request “Hey Siri”:* Turn off Listen for “Hey Siri.”
- *Prevent Siri from responding to the Home button or the top button:* Turn off Press Home for Siri (on an iPad with a Home button) or Press Top Button for Siri (on other iPad models).
- *Prevent access to Siri when iPad is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.
- *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

You can also activate Siri by typing. See [Type instead of speaking to Siri](#).

Change the voice for Siri

You can change the Siri voice (not available for all languages).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search.
 2. Tap Siri Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.
-

Change how Siri responds

Siri can respond out loud or silently (with text onscreen). You can also see your request onscreen.

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
 - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
 - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Speech.
-

Change Siri settings for FaceTime and Messages

You can perform tasks for FaceTime  and Messages  with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then do any of the following:

- *Hang up FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. See [Make FaceTime calls on iPad](#).
- *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Automatically Send Messages, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See [Send and reply to messages on iPad](#).

On supported headphones, Siri can also [announce calls, messages, and more](#).

Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, then select an app.
 2. Turn settings on or off.
-

Retrain Siri with your voice

Go to Settings  > Siri & Search, turn off Listen for “Hey Siri,” then turn on Listen for “Hey Siri” again.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see [Change Siri accessibility settings on iPad](#).

If Siri doesn’t work as expected on your iPad, see the Apple Support article [If “Hey Siri” isn’t working on your iPhone or iPad](#).

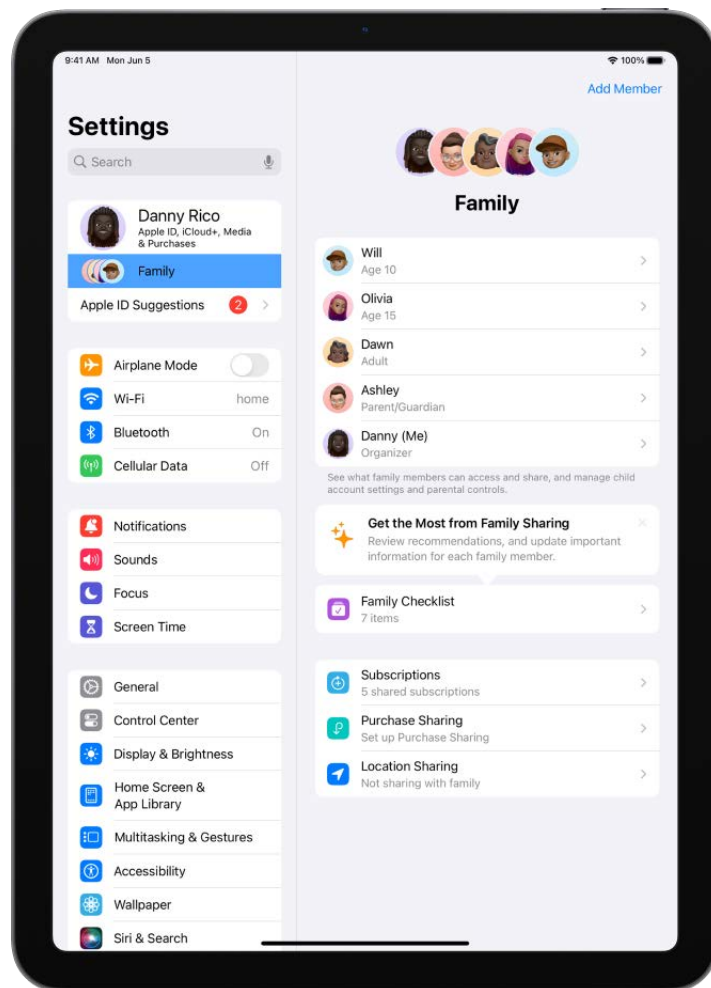
Family Sharing

Set up Family Sharing on iPad

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).



Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Family, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.
2. Add one or more family members. When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian. Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

You can also add family members later. See [Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPad](#).

3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.

To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article [Set up Family Sharing](#).

What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- *Passwords and passkeys:* You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See [Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPad](#).
- *An iCloud Drive folder:* Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See [Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPad](#).
- *Apple and App Store subscriptions:* You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See [Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPad](#).
- *Purchases:* You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See [Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPad](#).
- *Locations:* When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app  to see your location and help locate a missing device. See [Share locations with family](#)

[members and locate their lost devices on iPad.](#)

- *Apple Card and Apple Cash:* You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPad \(U.S. only\)](#).
- *Parental controls:* You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPad](#).
- *A device for your child:* You can set up a new iOS or iPadOS device for a child and customize parental controls. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPad](#).

 **Tip:** You can use Family Checklist to see tips and suggestions for Family Sharing features. Go to Settings  > Family, then tap Family Checklist.

Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPad

With [Family Sharing](#), each family member joins the family group with their own Apple ID. That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.

The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple ID or create an Apple ID for a child who doesn't have one yet.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Add a family member with an Apple ID

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings  > Family, then tap  in the upper-right corner.
2. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their Apple ID and password on your device.

Create an Apple ID for a child

If a child is too young to create their own Apple ID, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can add the child to the Family Sharing group and create an Apple ID for them.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.

2. Do one of the following:

- *If you're the organizer:* Tap , tap Create Child Account.

Note: If your child already has an Apple ID, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple ID password on your device to accept the invitation.

- *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap .

3. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account. You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; share your child's location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:

- [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPad](#)
- [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPad](#)
- [Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#)

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple ID, see the Apple Support article [Create an Apple ID for your child](#).

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, [ask the organizer to add you](#). You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See [Leave a Family Sharing group](#).

Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPad

In a [Family Sharing group](#), the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.

2. Tap [*member's name*], then tap Remove [*member's name*] from Family.

You can't remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple ID. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPad](#).

Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

Note: The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.

2. Tap [*your name*], then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Disband a Family Sharing group

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

Note: If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move them to another group or delete their Apple ID before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > [*your name*].

2. Tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPad

When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has [purchase sharing](#) turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

Note: Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
 - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- *Apple Arcade:* See [Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPad](#). All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.
- *Apple Fitness+:* See [All about Apple Fitness+](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- *Apple Music:* See [Subscribe to Apple Music on iPad](#). With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- *Apple News+:* See [Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPad](#). All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.
- *Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:* See [Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPad](#) and [Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPad](#). Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple ID and password.
- *iCloud+:* See [Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPad](#). When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store  subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see [Get apps in the App Store on iPad](#).

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Subscriptions.
2. Do either of the following:
 - *Share all new subscriptions:* Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.
 - *Change the settings of a specific subscription:* Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.

If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPad

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPad](#).

Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
 2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Access shared content

When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download apps and play content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- [How to download apps and content that your family members purchased](#)
 - [What types of content can I share with my family?](#)
 - [If you don't see your family's shared content](#)
-

Turn off purchase sharing for yourself

You can turn off purchase sharing for yourself. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

Note: Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap [*your name*], then turn off Share Purchases.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).

You can also [share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPad

With [Family Sharing](#), you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can [see your location in Find My](#). You can also [get notified when family members change their locations](#)—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Location Sharing.
2. Tap the name of a family member you want to share your location with.

You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

Note: Children and teens with [Screen Time turned on](#) may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Control the location information you share on iPad](#).

Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device [added to the Find My app](#).

See [Locate a device in Find My on iPad](#).

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

1. Tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) to locate a family member's missing device. See [Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPad (U.S. only)

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your [Family Sharing](#) group. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Set up Apple Cash Family for a child

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and limit who the child can send money to, go to Settings > Wallet. See [Manage your Apple Cash](#).

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles [Set up and use Apple Cash Family](#) and [View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity](#).

Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Share My Apple Card.

The option only appears if you have Apple Card.

2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants](#).

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPad

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up parental controls for children in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for purchases or free downloads.

Learn about types of Family Sharing members.

Customize parental controls during setup

When you [add a child](#) to your Family Sharing group or [set up a device for a child](#), you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See [Check for sensitive photos in Messages and AirDrop on a family member's device](#).

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Block inappropriate content on a family member's device](#).

Set up Screen Time for a child later

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article [System Requirements for iCloud](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > [*child's name*] > Screen Time.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.
3. Tap Screen Time, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For information about Screen Time settings, see [Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPad](#).

To learn more about the different content & privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings  > Screen Time or in Messages .

Turn on Ask to Buy for a child later

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article [Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#).

Note: Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPad \(U.S. only\)](#).

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPad

With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPad to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up a device for a child without using Quick Start.

If you didn't sign in to a child's account when you set up their device, you can do so in Settings with their Apple ID and password, or by using proximity sign-in with a nearby iPhone or iPad.

Note: If the child already has an Apple ID, make sure they've been added to your [Family Sharing group](#). If the child doesn't have an Apple ID and they're under 13 ([this age varies by region](#)), you can create one for them while adding them to the group.

Use Quick Start to set up an iPad or iPhone for a child

Note: Requires iPadOS 16 or later. Bluetooth must be turned on.

1. Sign in to your iPad with your Apple ID.
2. On the new iPad or iPhone you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
3. Bring your iPad next to the new device.
4. When you see Set Up New [device] on your iPad, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:
 - If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.
 - If you need to create a new Apple ID for a child [who is under 13](#), tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple ID for your child.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

Set up an iPad or iPhone for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.
2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Set Up for a Child in My Family.
3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

Set up an iPad or iPhone for a child in Settings

If you didn't sign in to a child's account during setup, do the following:

1. Go to Settings .
 2. Tap Sign in to your iPad.
 3. Do one of the following:
 - *Sign in with a nearby iPad or iPhone:* Tap Use Another Apple Device, then follow the onscreen instructions. If you already have a child in your family group, tap their name, then tap Get Started. If you need to create a new Apple ID for a child, tap Create New Child Account.
 - *Sign in with an email address or phone number and password:* Tap Sign in Manually, then tap Sign in a child in my Family.
 4. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.
-

You can set [content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime](#); set up [Screen Distance](#); [share locations](#) with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and turn on [Ask to Buy](#). You can change these settings at any time.

Note: Screen Distance is available on supported models.

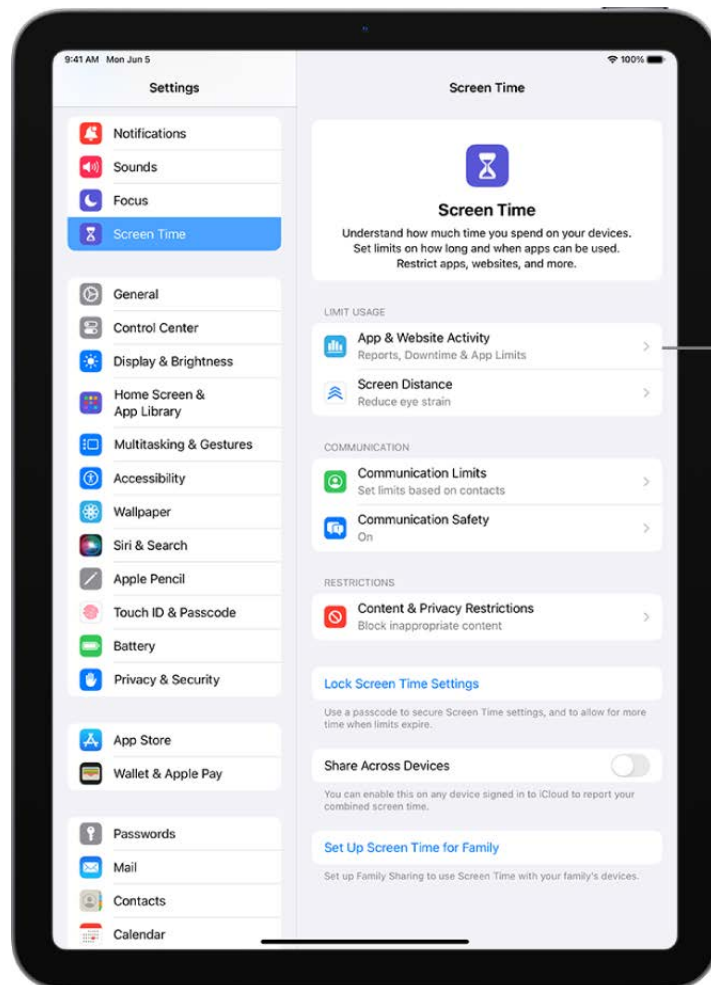
Screen Time

Get started with Screen Time on iPad

You can use Screen Time to get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device.

Turn on Screen Time

Go to Settings  > Screen Time, tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn on App & Website Activity.



Tap here to get started setting up Screen Time.

Use Screen Time on all your devices

You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.

2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you turn on App & Website Activity, you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPad and other devices, what apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use.
 - Tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.



Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by [adding a Screen Time widget](#) to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you [set up Screen Time for family members](#) through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group, Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can [find it in Notification Center](#).)

Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPad

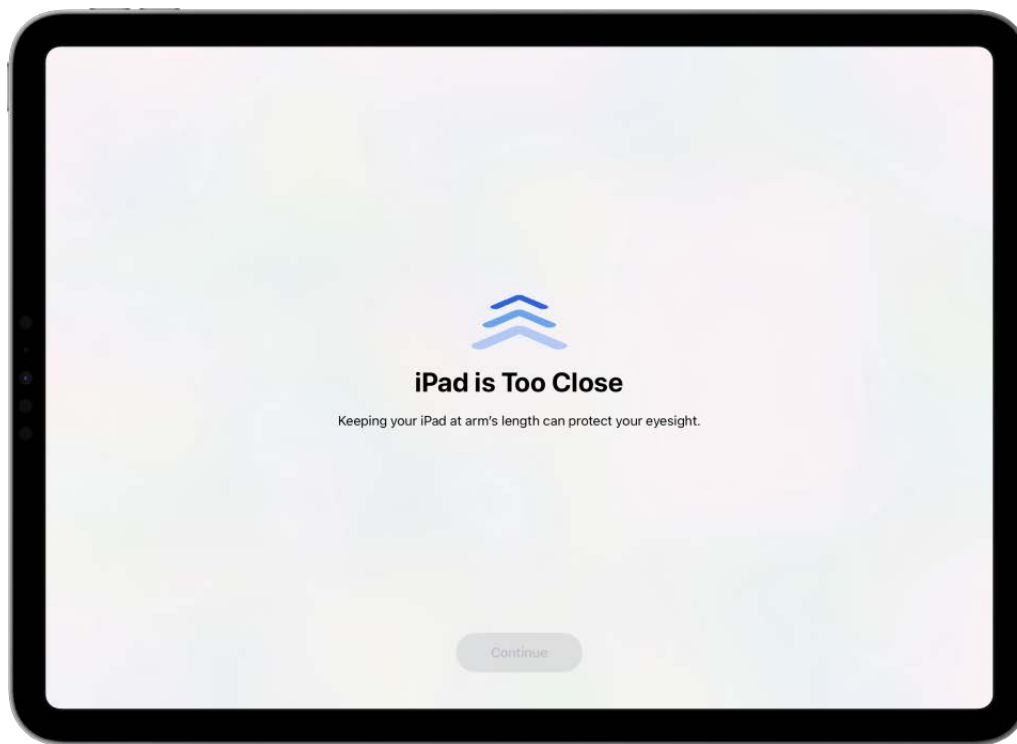
Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia for younger users and eyestrain for users of all ages. The Screen Distance feature in Screen Time uses the TrueDepth camera (supported models) to detect when you hold iPad closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

Note: Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

-
1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
 2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn on Screen Distance.
-

When you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPad more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.



When you see a Screen Distance alert, move your iPad to a distance greater than 12 inches, then tap Continue when it becomes active.

Set up Screen Time on iPad

In Screen Time, you can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

Schedule time away from the screen

You can block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to [allow communication with during downtime](#), and you can use apps you've chosen to [allow at all times](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then turn on App & Website Activity if you haven't already.
3. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:
 - Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.
 - Tap Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.

When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.

4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

Set limits for app use

You can set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
3. Select one or more app categories.

To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

4. Tap Next, then set the amount of time allowed.

To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.
-

Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

You can specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times—for example, in the event of an emergency—even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
2. Below Allowed Apps, tap  or  next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.
3. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap Contacts.

The option you selected in Communication Limits appears here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

- *Choose From My Contacts:* To select specific people to allow communication with.
- *Add New Contact:* To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.

4. Tap  at the top left.
-

Set communication and safety limits and block inappropriate content on iPad

In Screen Time, you can set limits to protect your privacy and block inappropriate content.

Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.
2. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, tap During Screen Time, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):
 - *Contacts Only*: To allow communication only with your contacts.
 - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact*: To allow one-on-one conversations only with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
 - *Everyone*: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.
4. Tap Back at the top left, then tap During Downtime.

The option you selected in step 3 (for During Screen Time) is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts, then choose one of the following:

- *Specific Contacts*: To select contacts to allow communication with during downtime.
- *Everyone*: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.

If someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your Communication Limit settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages, and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a Time Limit message. You can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

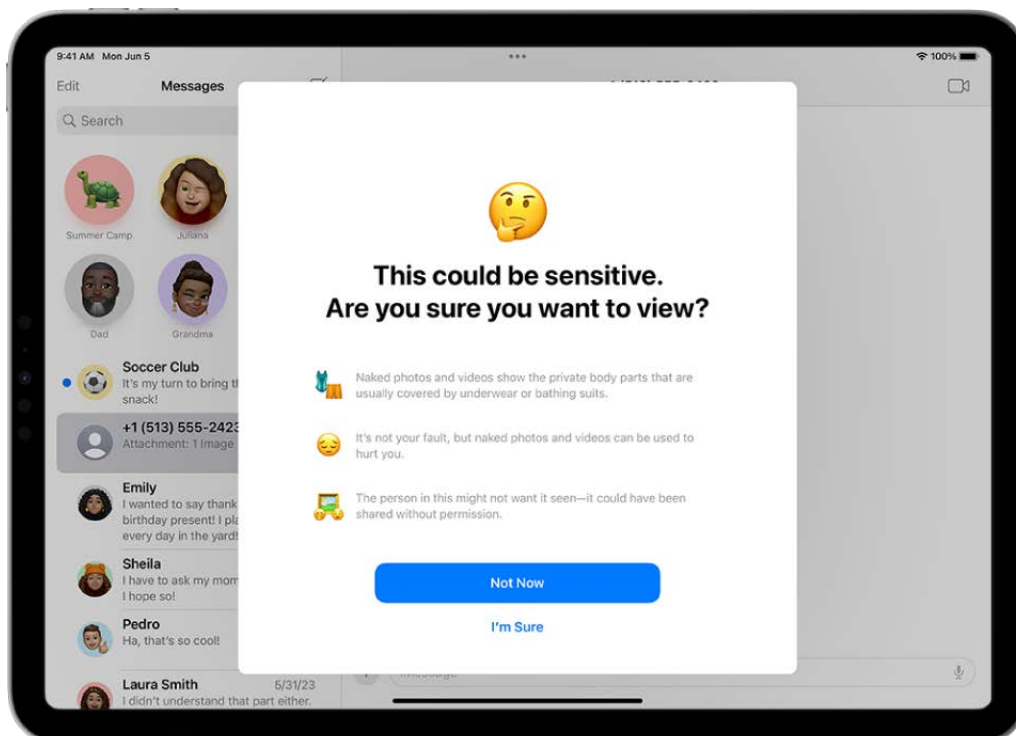
To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Check for sensitive images

You can have your iPad (or your family member's iPad) detect nudity in images before they're received in Messages, AirDrop, [Contact Posters](#), FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that use Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article [About communication safety in Messages](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

When Communication Safety is turned on, iPad detects nude images before they're viewed, and displays a warning.



Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPad](#).

Block inappropriate content

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to have block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.

You can also set a passcode that's required before changing settings.

2. Select options to set content allowances for iTunes Store and App Store purchases, app use, content ratings, and more.

Note: To restrict [SharePlay in FaceTime calls](#) on your device, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPad

With Screen Time, you can keep track of how family members are using their devices, so you can help them structure the time they spend on them. You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device or, if you've set up Family Sharing, you can set up Screen Time for a family member on your device. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPad](#) and the Apple Support article [Family Sharing and Apple ID for your child](#).

As the organizer of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you can set up content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime. After the child's account is set up, you can change parental control settings at any time in Settings > Screen Time. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPad](#).

Note: For children under 13, [Communication Safety](#) and [Screen Distance](#) are enabled by default, and the Web Content Filter blocks adult content.

Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. On your device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and select a family member below Family.
3. To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in [Schedule time away from the screen](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.

4. To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in [Set limits for app use](#).
5. To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in [Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times](#).

Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.

6. To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia or eyestrain, [turn on Screen Distance](#).

Allow or block communication on a family member's device

You can block incoming and outgoing communication on your family member's device—including phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—with specific contacts, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on Contacts in iCloud on your family member's device, go to Settings  > [child's name] > iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Note: You can only manage your family member's communication if they're using Contacts in iCloud.

2. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
3. Tap Communication Limits, then do any of the following:
 - *Limit communication at any time:* Tap During Screen Time, then select Contacts Only, Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact, or Everyone.
 - *Limit communication during downtime:* Tap During Downtime. The option you selected for During Screen Time is already set here. You can change this setting to Specific Contacts.

If you select Specific Contacts, tap either Choose From My Contacts, Choose from [child's name] Contacts, or Add New Contact to select people you want to allow your family member to communicate with during downtime.

- *Manage a child's contacts:* If you're using Family Sharing, you can manage your child's contacts. Tap Manage [child's name] Contacts.

If your child already has contacts in iCloud, they receive a notification on their device asking them to approve the request to manage them. If they don't have contacts, they don't get a notification and you can immediately add contacts.

When you manage your child's contacts, a new row appears beneath Manage [child's name] Contacts to show how many contacts they have. You can view and edit those contacts by tapping that row.

- *Allow contact editing:* Tap Allow Contact Editing to turn off this option and prevent your child from editing their contacts.

Turning off contact editing and limiting communication at any time to Contacts Only is a good way to control who your child can communicate with and when they can be contacted.

If someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings tries to call your family member (by phone or FaceTime), or send them a message, their communication won't go through.

If your family member tries to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by the Communication Limit settings, the recipient's name or number appears in red with a Screen Time hourglass icon, and the communication won't go through. If the limit applies only to downtime, your family member receives a Time Limit message and can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To allow your family member to communicate with contacts who are blocked by the Communication Limit settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Check for sensitive images on a family member's iPad

You can have your family member's iPad detect nudity in images before they're sent or received in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article [About communication safety in Messages](#).

Note: For children under 13 in a Family Sharing group, Communication Safety is turned on by default.

1. On your device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and tap the name of your family member.
3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPad](#).

Block inappropriate content on a family member's device

You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Choose specific content and privacy options.

Note: To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.) See [Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings](#).

Note: To restrict [SharePlay in FaceTime calls](#), go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

4. Tap  at the top left.

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your Apple ID to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

Wallet & Apple Pay

Set up Apple Pay on iPad

Set up Apple Pay to make secure payments in apps and on websites that support Apple Pay. (Available in certain countries and regions; see [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).)

Add a credit or debit card

To add Apple Card, see [Set up and use Apple Card on iPad](#). For other debit and credit cards, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, then tap Add Card. You may be asked to sign in with your Apple ID.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Add a new card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then position your card so that it appears in the frame, or enter the card details manually.
 - *Add your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple ID, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, cards you [added to Safari AutoFill](#), or cards you removed from Wallet. Tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *Add a card from a supported app:* Tap the app of your bank or card issuer (below From Apps on Your iPad).

The card issuer determines whether your card is eligible for Apple Pay, and may ask you for additional information to complete the verification process.

Set the default card

The first card you add becomes your default card for payments. You can set a different card as the default at any time.

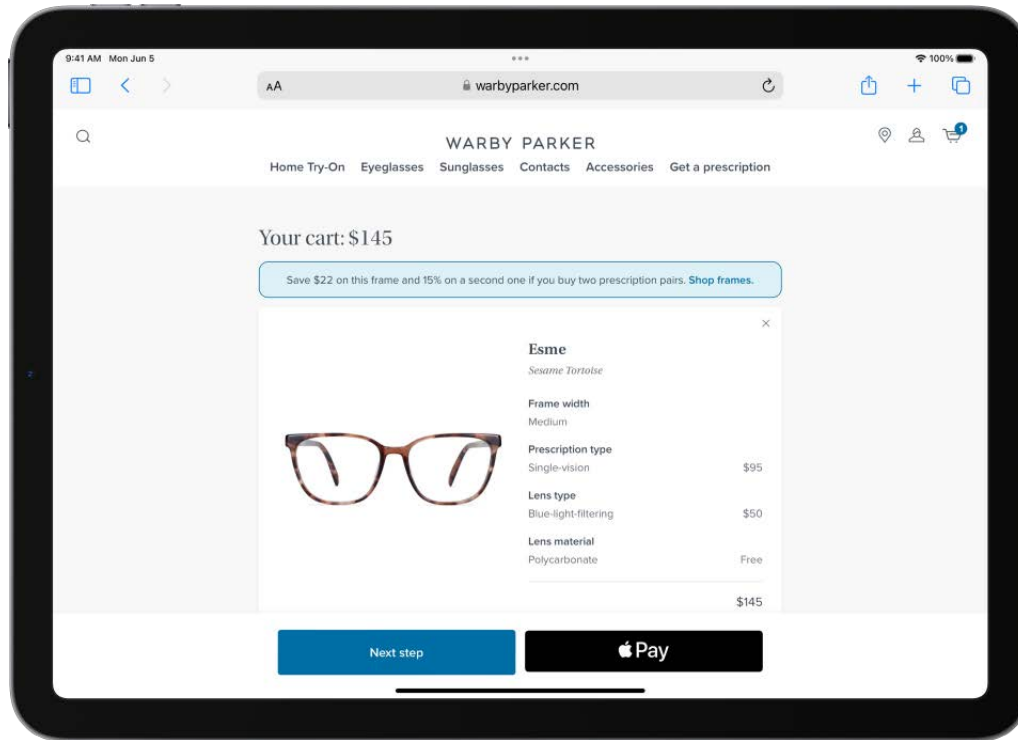
Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Default Card, then choose a card.

Note: The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPad

You can make purchases using Apple Pay in apps, in App Clips, and on the web using Safari wherever you see the Apple Pay button. (Available in certain countries and regions; see [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).)

COMMENT: #ba #wallet - Warby Parker screen approved by F. Hanson 2023-07-24 [Dawn]



Pay in an app, in an App Clip, or on the web

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.
2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:

- Credit card
- Billing and shipping addresses
- Contact information

 **Tip:** If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can [use Hide My Email](#) to keep your real email address private.

- Frequency and amount of recurring payments (if available)
3. Complete the payment:
 - *On an iPad with Face ID:* Double-click the top button, then glance at iPad to authenticate with Face ID, or enter your passcode.
 - *On an iPad with Touch ID:* Authenticate with Touch ID or enter your passcode.

Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Set any of the following:
 - Shipping address
 - Email
 - Phone

Track your orders in Wallet

When you make a purchase from a participating merchant, you can track your order in the Wallet app  on iPhone and see the order details, shipping status, order management options, and more. You can also contact the merchant directly from the Wallet app.

Track orders

- *Automatically:* Track orders for select Apple Pay purchases made on devices with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later.
- *Manually:* Tap Track with Apple Wallet on the order confirmation screen in apps with iOS 17 or iPadOS 17, or on the web with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or macOS Sonoma.

View and share order tracking details

1. Open the Wallet app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap an order to see the details.
3. To share the order information, tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages.

Set up and use Apple Cash on iPad

With Apple Cash (available in the U.S.), you can send, request, and receive money in the Messages app , make purchases, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.

Set up Apple Cash

Do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, then turn on Apple Cash.
- In Messages, [send or accept a payment](#).

Make purchases with Apple Cash using Apple Pay

You can use Apple Cash at locations that accept Visa and support Apple Pay. See [Use Apple Pay in apps, App Clips, and Safari](#).

Make purchases with the virtual card number

In iPadOS 17.4 or later, you can also use Apple Cash in apps or on the web where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted.

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap Apple Cash, then tap Card Information.
3. View the card number, expiration date, and security code. Use this information to make your purchase.

 **Tip:** You can automatically enter this information and see your Apple Cash balance when you [use Safari Autofill](#).

Send or request payments with Apple Cash

See [Request, send, and receive payments in Messages on iPad \(U.S. only\)](#).

Accept payments with Apple Cash

Money you receive is added to your Apple Cash balance. You can choose to automatically or manually accept payments.

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, then tap Apple Cash.

2. Choose one of the following:

- Automatically Accept Payments
- Manually Accept Payments

You have 7 days to accept a payment before it's returned to the sender.

View your balance and transactions

Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay. You can see your balance below Apple Cash.

You can also do the following:

- *View your transactions:* Tap Transactions. Scroll down to see your transactions grouped by year.
 - *Get a statement:* Scroll down, then tap Request Transaction Statement.
-

Manage your Apple Cash

Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Apple Cash, then do any of the following:

- Add money from a debit card. You can also set up Auto Reload.
 - Transfer money to your bank. See the Apple Support article [Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or Visa debit card](#).
 - Update your bank account information.
 - Contact Apple Support.
 - Set up and use Apple Cash for members of your Family Sharing group that are under 18 years old. See [Set up Apple Cash Family for a child](#).
 - Verify your identity for account servicing and to increase your transaction limits.
-

Set up and use Apple Card on iPad

Apple Card (available in the U.S.) is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card on iPad in minutes and start using it with Apple Pay right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.

Get Apple Card

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Add Card, then tap Apply for Apple Card.
2. Enter your information, then agree to the terms and conditions to submit your application.
3. Review the details of your Apple Card offer, including the credit limit and APR, then accept or decline the offer.
4. If you accept the terms, you can do any of the following:
 - Set Apple Card as your default card for Apple Pay transactions.
 - Get a physical Apple Card to use where Apple Pay isn't accepted.

Use Apple Card

On iPad, you can use Apple Card to [make Apple Pay purchases in apps or on the web](#).

You can also use Apple Card at locations where Apple Pay isn't accepted:

- *In apps, on the web, or over the phone:* Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Apple Card, then tap Card Information to see the card number, expiration date, and security code. Use this information to make your purchase.
- *In stores, restaurants, and other locations:* Use the titanium card.

View transactions and statements

Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Apple Card, then do any of the following:

- *Review your transactions:* Tap Transactions, then review your latest transactions, or scroll down to see all your transactions grouped by year.

- *Get monthly statements:* Tap Card Balance to see the balance, new spending, and payments and credits. Scroll down to see your monthly statements. Tap a statement to see the summary for that month, download the PDF, or export transactions to a CSV, OFX, QFX, or QBO file.
-

Make payments

Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Apple Card, then do any of the following:

- *Schedule payments:* Tap Scheduled Payments, choose Pay My Bill or Pay Different Amount, enter the payment details (such as the account and date), then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
 - *Make a one-time payment:* Tap Make a Payment, drag the checkmark to adjust the payment amount or tap Show Keypad to enter an amount, tap Pay Now or Pay Later, review the payment details (such as the payment account), then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
-

Use the Apple Card widget on your Home Screen

With the Apple Card widget, you can see your Apple Card balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

1. [Add the Apple Card widget](#) to your Home Screen.
 2. To see your spending activity for a different time period, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose Weekly, Monthly, or Yearly.
 3. To manage your Apple Card, tap the widget.
-

View Apple Card details, change settings, contact support, and more

Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Apple Card, then do any of the following:

- Share your Apple Card with family members, set transaction limits, and more.
- Manage Apple Card Monthly Installments.
- Review scheduled payments.
- View credit details.
- Add or remove linked bank accounts.
- Lock or unlock your titanium card and request a replacement.
- Change notification settings.
- Update your billing address.

- Get support through Messages, by phone, or on the [Apple Card Support website](#).
-

Use Savings to grow your Daily Cash rewards in Wallet on iPad (U.S. only)

If you have Apple Card, you can choose to automatically deposit your Daily Cash into Savings, a savings account provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Member FDIC.¹ You can also deposit additional funds into Savings through a linked external bank account or from your Apple Cash.² You can transfer money from Savings to a linked external bank account or to Apple Cash.

Note: Apple Card, Savings, and Apple Cash are available only in the U.S. If you have Apple Card Family, only account owners and co-owners can set up Savings; each account holder can see only their own account balance and details in Wallet.

Set up Savings

1. On your iPhone, open the Wallet app .
2. Tap Apple Card, tap , then tap Daily Cash.
3. Tap Set Up next to Savings, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use the Savings dashboard

To see detailed account information such as the account balance over time, use the Savings dashboard on your iPhone. See [View and manage your Savings](#) in the iPhone User Guide.

View and manage your account on iPad

1. On your iPad, go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
 2. Tap Savings, then do any of the following:
 - *View the balance:* See the current and available balances.
 - *See your transactions:* Tap Transactions.
 - *Transfer funds:* Tap Add Money or Withdraw, enter the amount, tap Next, review the information, then authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
 - *See your routing and account numbers:* Tap Routing & Account Numbers, then authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID.
 - *Add a bank account for transfers:* Tap Bank Accounts, tap Add a Bank Account, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *See monthly statements and tax documents:* Tap Documents.
-

1. Daily Cash may not be divided between Apple Cash and a Savings account. Apple Card owners and co-owners may individually change where their Daily Cash is deposited at any time. To open Savings, you must add Apple Card to Wallet on an iPhone or iPad with the latest version of iOS or iPadOS. Apple is not a financial institution. Apple Card and Savings are issued and provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Salt Lake City Branch. Member FDIC.

2. Apple Cash is provided by Green Dot Bank. Member FDIC.

Manage Apple Pay cards and activity on iPad

In Settings , you can manage the cards you use for Apple Pay and review your recent transactions.

View the information for a card and change its settings

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap a card, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Transactions to view your recent history. To hide this information, turn off Show History. To view all your Apple Pay activity, see the statement from your card issuer.
 - View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.
 - Change the billing address.
 - Remove the card from Apple Pay.

Change your Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Set your default card.
 - Add the shipping address and contact information for purchases.

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPad is lost or stolen

If you enabled [Find My](#), you can use it to help locate and secure your iPad.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On a Mac or PC:* Sign in to your [Apple ID account](#). In the Devices section, select the lost iPad. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.
- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  > [your name], select the lost iPad, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).
- Call the issuers of your cards.

If you remove cards, you can add them again later.

If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [your name], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPad. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in.

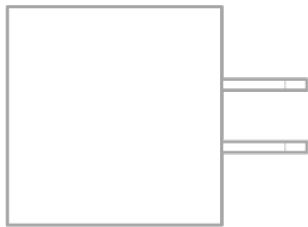
Accessories

Power adapter and charge cable for iPad

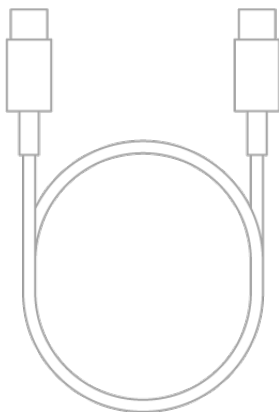
You can connect iPad to a power outlet and [charge the battery](#) by using the included USB-C power adapter and charge cable. The size and type of the adapter depends on your iPad model and your country or region. The type of charge cable depends on your iPad model.

You can also use the charge cable to [connect iPad to your computer](#) for charging, transferring files, using iPad as a second display for your Mac, and more.

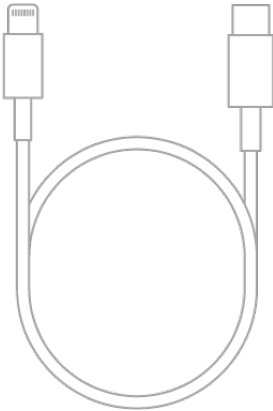
USB-C Power Adapter



USB-C Charge Cable



Lightning to USB-C Cable



AirPods and EarPods

Use AirPods with iPad

After you pair AirPods (sold separately) with iPad, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPad, make and answer FaceTime calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

Pair AirPods with your iPad

1. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPad.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *AirPods (1st, 2nd, and 3rd generation) and AirPods Pro:* Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPad.
 - *AirPods Max:* Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPad.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

Note: If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

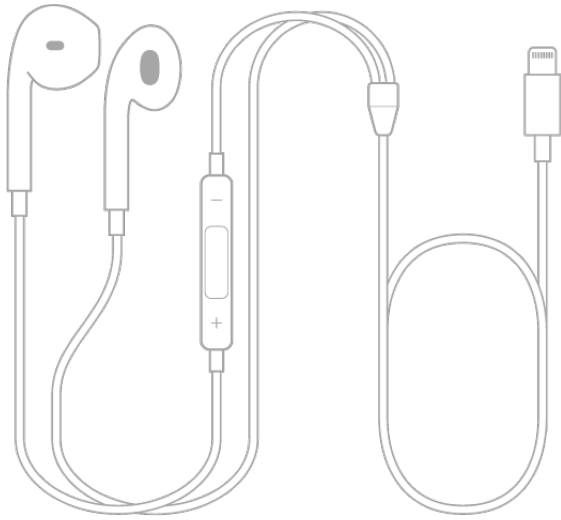
Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article [If your AirPods won't connect](#).

Do more with AirPods and your iPad

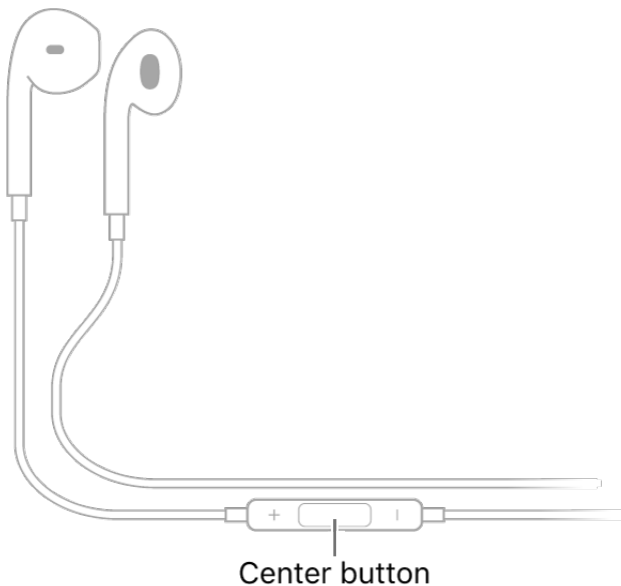
See the [AirPods User Guide](#) for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

Use EarPods with Lightning Connector on iPad

You can use EarPods with Lightning Connector (sold separately) to listen to music and videos, and make calls on an iPad model with a Lightning port. EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.



Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPad is locked.



Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause:* Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
 - *Skip forward:* Press the center button twice quickly.
 - *Skip backward:* Press the center button three times quickly.
 - *Fast-forward:* Press the center button twice quickly and hold.
-

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call:* Press the center button.
 - *End the current call:* Press the center button.
 - *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold:* Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.
-

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See [Use Siri on iPad](#).

Use headphone audio-level features on iPad

You can set a maximum decibel level to ensure that headphone audio doesn't become uncomfortable for you. iPad analyzes your headphone audio and reduces any sound above this level.

You can also check whether the current audio level is OK or loud by viewing a headphone level meter.

Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings

1. Go to Settings  > Sounds > Reduce Loud Sounds.
2. Turn on Reduce Loud Sounds, then drag the slider.

Note: If you [set up Screen Time](#) for a family member, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Sounds level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow.

Check your headphone level while you listen

While using headphones with iPad, you can use Hearing in Control Center to check their current decibel level. AirPods, EarPods, and many other wired and wireless headphones are compatible with Hearing in Control Center.

1. Go to Settings  > Control Center, then add Hearing.
2. Connect your headphones, then play audio.
3. Open Control Center, then tap .

The audio level (in decibels) of your headphones is displayed on the Headphone Level meter.

Note: You can also scroll below the Headphone Level meter to turn Live Listen on or off. See [Use iPad as a remote microphone with Live Listen](#). Typically, headphone level monitoring and Live Listen aren't used at the same time. The Headphone Level monitor is intended for listening to audio playback. Live Listen is intended for listening to external sounds with the iPad microphone.

Improve the accuracy of audio measurements for third-party Bluetooth headphones

Classify your Bluetooth® devices as headphones, speakers, or other devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap the information button  next to the name of the device.
 2. Tap Device Type, then choose a classification.
-

When you connect AirPods, EarPods, and other compatible headphones to your iPad, the headphone audio levels are automatically sent to iPad. Headphone audio measurements are most accurate when using Apple or Beats headphones. Audio played through other headphones can be estimated based on the volume of your iPad.

Apple Pencil

Apple Pencil compatibility with iPad models

Find out which Apple Pencil (sold separately) works with your iPad.

Apple Pencil (1st generation)



Apple Pencil (1st generation) is compatible with the following models:

- iPad mini (5th generation)
- iPad (6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th generations)
- iPad Air (3rd generation)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st and 2nd generation)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil \(1st generation\) with iPad](#).

Apple Pencil (2nd generation)



Apple Pencil (2nd generation) is compatible with the following models:

- iPad mini (6th generation)
- iPad Air (4th and 5th generations)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generations)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generations)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil \(2nd generation\) with iPad](#).

Apple Pencil (USB-C)



Apple Pencil (USB-C) is compatible with the following models:

- iPad mini (6th generation)
- iPad (10th generation)
- iPad Air (4th and 5th generations)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generations)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generations)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil \(USB-C\) with iPad](#).

Apple Pencil Pro



Apple Pencil Pro is compatible with the following models:

- iPad Air 11-inch (M2)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil Pro with iPad](#).

Pair and charge Apple Pencil (1st generation) with iPad

You can pair and charge Apple Pencil (1st generation) by plugging it into the Lightning or USB-C connector on your [compatible iPad](#).



Pair and charge Apple Pencil (1st generation) on an iPad with a Home button

1. Remove the cap and plug Apple Pencil into the Lightning connector on your iPad.



2. Do any of the following:

- *Pair Apple Pencil:* When the Pair button appears, tap it.

After you pair Apple Pencil, unplug it from iPad. Apple Pencil stays paired until you restart your iPad, turn off Bluetooth®, or pair with another iPad. Just pair Apple Pencil again when you're ready to use it.

- *Charge Apple Pencil:* Apple Pencil charges while it's plugged into your iPad.

If your pencil came with an Apple Pencil Charging Adapter, you can also charge it using the Lightning Cable and power adapter that came with your iPad.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil with iPad (10th generation)

1. Remove the cap and plug Apple Pencil into the USB-C to Apple Pencil Adapter.
2. Connect the other end of the adapter to your iPad using the USB-C charge cable that came with your iPad.



3. Do any of the following:

- *Pair Apple Pencil:* When the Pair button appears, tap it.

After you pair Apple Pencil, unplug it from iPad. Apple Pencil stays paired until you restart your iPad, turn off Bluetooth, or pair with another iPad. Just pair Apple Pencil again when you're ready to use it.

- *Charge Apple Pencil:* Apple Pencil charges while it's plugged into your iPad.

 **Tip:** You can also charge Apple Pencil using the USB-C charge cable and power adapter that came with your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPad](#).
 - Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil.
-

Pair and charge Apple Pencil (2nd generation) with iPad

You can attach Apple Pencil (2nd generation) to the magnetic connector on the right side of your [compatible iPad](#) to pair and charge it.



Pair Apple Pencil (2nd generation) with iPad

Attach Apple Pencil to the magnetic connector on the right side of your iPad.

Charge Apple Pencil (2nd generation)

1. Make sure that Bluetooth® is turned on in Settings  > Bluetooth.
2. Attach Apple Pencil to the magnetic connector on the right side of your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

Do any of the following:

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPad](#).
- Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil (USB-C) with iPad

You can pair and charge Apple Pencil by plugging it into the USB-C connector on your [compatible iPad](#).



Pair and charge Apple Pencil (USB-C)

1. Slide open the end of Apple Pencil and connect it to the USB-C charge cable that came with your iPad.



2. Connect the other end of the USB-C charge cable to the USB-C connector on iPad.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Pair Apple Pencil:* Tap "Tap to Connect."

After you pair Apple Pencil, you can disconnect it from the USB-C charge cable. Apple Pencil stays paired until you restart your iPad, turn off Bluetooth®, or pair with another iPad. Just pair Apple Pencil again you're ready to use it.

- *Charge Apple Pencil:* Apple Pencil charges while it's plugged into your iPad.

 **Tip:** You can also charge Apple Pencil using the USB-C charge cable and power adapter that came with your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

Do any of the following:

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPad](#).
- Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil Pro with iPad

Attach Apple Pencil Pro to the magnetic connector on the long side of your [compatible iPad](#) to pair and charge it.



Pair Apple Pencil Pro with iPad

Attach Apple Pencil Pro to the magnetic connector on the long side of your iPad.

Charge Apple Pencil Pro

1. Make sure that Bluetooth® is turned on in Settings  > Bluetooth.
 2. Attach Apple Pencil Pro to the magnetic connector on the long side of your iPad.
-

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPad](#).
 - Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil.
-

Enter text with Scribble on iPad

On [supported models](#), you can use Apple Pencil (sold separately) and Scribble to enter text. Without opening or using the onscreen keyboard, you can quickly reply to a message, write yourself a reminder, and more. Scribble converts your handwriting to text directly on your iPad, so your writing stays private.

Note: Scribble is available in several languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Use Apple Pencil to enter text in any text field

1. Write with Apple Pencil in any text field, and Scribble automatically converts your handwriting into typed text.

Scribble even works when your handwriting extends beyond the edges of the text field.

2. To use an action shortcut, tap the Scribble toolbar.

Available actions depend on the app you're using, and may include the Undo button , the Show Keyboard button , and more.

To automatically minimize the toolbar when you're entering text, tap , then turn on Auto-minimize. To show the full toolbar, tap the minimized version.

Use Apple Pencil to enter text in Notes and Freeform

1. In Notes or Freeform, tap  to show the tool palette.
2. In the tool palette, tap the Handwriting tool  (to the left of the pen).
3. Write with Apple Pencil, and Scribble automatically converts your handwriting into typed text.

Select and revise text with Apple Pencil

As you enter text using Apple Pencil and Scribble, you can do the following:

- *Delete a word:* Scratch it out.
- *Insert text:* Touch and hold in a text area, then write in the space that opens.
- *Join or separate characters:* Draw a vertical line between them.
- *Select text:* Draw a circle around the text or underline it to select it and see editing options. To change the selection, drag from the beginning or end of the selected text.
- *Select a word:* Double-tap the word.
- *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap a word within the paragraph, or drag Apple Pencil over the paragraph.

Stop converting your handwriting to text

Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil, then turn off Scribble.

Draw with Apple Pencil on iPad

On [supported models](#), you can use Apple Pencil (sold separately) to draw or sketch, mark up a photo, sign a document, and more.

Compared to using your finger, Apple Pencil gives you extra control as you draw.

Apply shading and darker lines

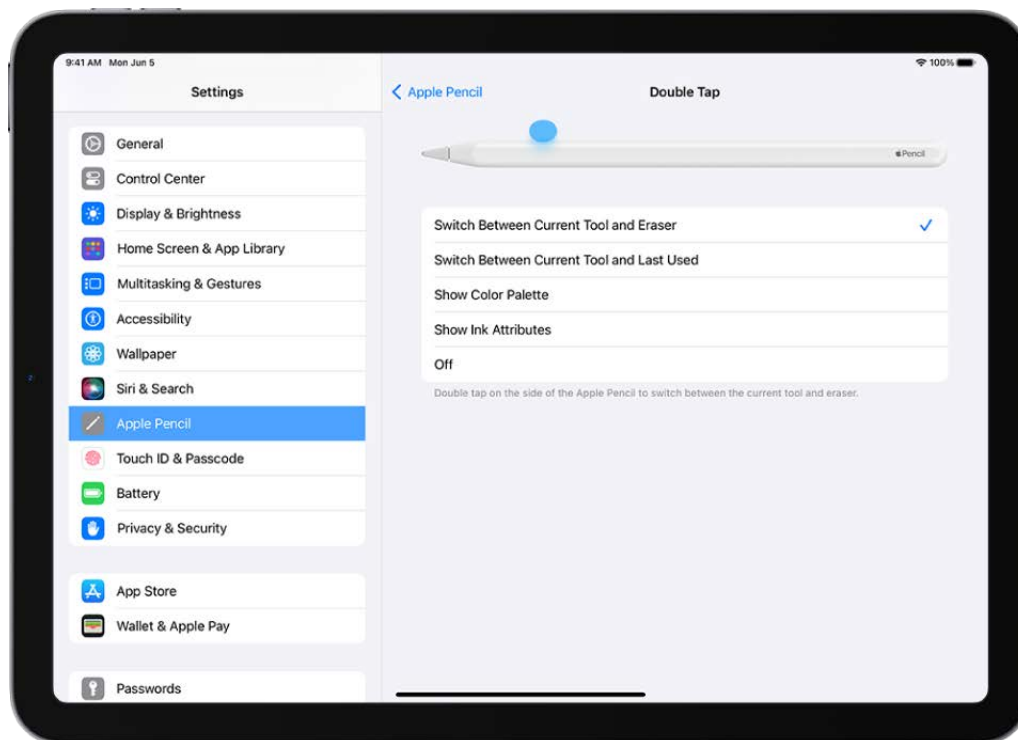
While you draw or sketch, tilt your Apple Pencil to apply shading or to vary the line thickness (depending on the drawing tool).

With Apple Pencil (1st and 2nd generations) and Apple Pencil Pro, you can also press more firmly to darken the line.

Double-tap to switch tools

With Apple Pencil (2nd generation) and Apple Pencil Pro, you can double-tap the barrel of the pencil to quickly switch back to the tool you used last. For example, you can switch from the marker back to the eraser. (The double-tap option is available in supported apps, such as Notes.)

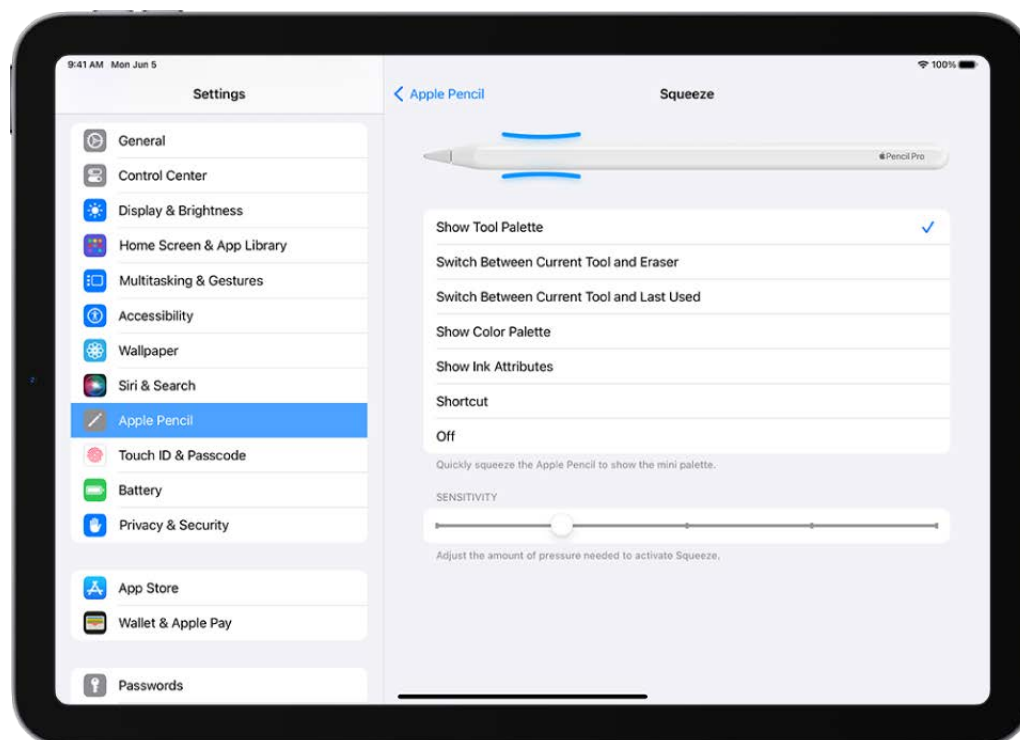
To choose another action for the double-tap setting, go to Settings  > Apple Pencil > Double Tap.



Squeeze Apple Pencil Pro to perform an action

With Apple Pencil Pro, you can squeeze the barrel of the pencil to quickly perform an action such as undo or show the tool palette.

To choose an action for the squeeze setting, go to Settings  > Apple Pencil > Squeeze.



Hover to preview tools and controls

With Apple Pencil hover, you can quickly preview and switch between different tools and controls in supported apps. You can preview a drawing tool before it makes a mark on the canvas. You can also sketch, write, and make adjustments with greater precision.

Apple Pencil hover is available on the following models:

- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation) and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation) with Apple Pencil (2nd generation)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), iPad Air 13-inch (M2), iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), and iPad Pro 13-inch (M4) with Apple Pencil Pro

Hold Apple Pencil up to 12 mm above the iPad display. Here are some examples of what you can do:

- *Explore the tool palette:* Hold Apple Pencil over the [tool palette](#), then move over the tools such as the pencil, brush, eraser, and colors. Touch the tool, color, and options you want to use.
- *Preview before you make a mark:* Hold Apple Pencil over the drawing area. With some drawing tools, you can even tilt Apple Pencil and change the azimuth (lateral angle) for different effects. For example, in the Notes app , you can preview the color, line thickness, and opacity of the highlighter.

With Apple Pencil Pro, you can rotate the barrel and preview the angle of drawing tools such as the highlighter and fountain pen.

- *Erase with precision:* Select the eraser tool, then select options such as the pixel eraser size or the object eraser. Hold Apple Pencil over the drawing area to preview the effects of the eraser.

To turn off Apple Pencil hover, go to Settings  > Apple Pencil, then turn off Hover.

Take and mark up a screenshot with Apple Pencil on iPad

You can use Apple Pencil to quickly take a picture of the iPad screen, then mark it up to share with others or use in documents.

1. To capture the screen, swipe up with Apple Pencil from either corner at the bottom of your iPad.
2. To mark up the screenshot, draw with Apple Pencil.

Use the tool palette at the bottom of the screen to change drawing tools. See [Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPad](#).

3. To send the marked up screenshot to others (such as in a message), or to save it in a document (such as in a note), tap , then choose an option.
 4. When you're finished, tap Done, then choose an option.
-

Quickly write notes with Apple Pencil on iPad

You can use Apple Pencil to quickly write a note from anywhere on iPad, even while iPad is locked (supported models).

Create a Quick Note

See [Create Quick Notes anywhere on iPad](#).

Wake iPad by drawing or writing a note

Tap Apple Pencil on the Lock Screen, then begin drawing or taking notes.

Whatever you create is [saved in Notes](#).

Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPad

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPad.

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app  or another supported video app on your iPad, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPad.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPad screen.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. In Photos  on your iPad, tap a photo, then tap .
2. Swipe up, tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPad.

To stop streaming photos, tap  near the top of the iPad screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPad to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Handoff, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPad on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPad.

1. Open Control Center on your iPad.

2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPad.

To switch back to iPad, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

Connect iPad to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPad to a secondary display, like a computer display, TV, or projector, where you can view the iPad screen.

To extend the workspace of your Mac by connecting it to your iPad, see [Use iPad as a second display for your Mac](#).

Connect iPad to Studio Display or Pro Display XDR

Your Apple display automatically turns on when you plug it into power and connect it to your iPad (supported models) using the Thunderbolt cable included with the display. Your iPad charges while connected to the display.

For more information about Studio Display or Pro Display XDR, see the [Displays Support website](#).

Connect your iPad using the USB-C connector

On models with a USB-C connector, you may be able to connect iPad to a USB or Thunderbolt 3 port on the display.

If the [charge cable](#) that came with your iPad isn't compatible with the port on your display, TV, or projector, do the following:

1. Plug a USB-C Display AV Adapter or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on iPad.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the display, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the display, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

If the display doesn't turn on when you connect it to iPad, unplug it from iPad, then plug it back in. If that doesn't work, unplug the display from its power source, then plug it in again.

See the Apple Support article [Charge and connect with the USB-C port on iPad Pro](#).

Connect your iPad if it has a Lightning connector

On a model with a Lightning connector, do the following:

1. Plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter or Lightning to VGA Adapter into the charging port on iPad.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the display, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the display, TV, or projector. If you need help, see the manual that came with your display.

To charge your iPad while it's connected to the display, TV, or projector, insert one end of your charge cable into the extra port on the adapter, insert the other end of the charge cable into the power adapter, then plug the power adapter to a power outlet.

Organize windows on your iPad and external display with Stage Manager

Stage Manager lets you connect supported iPad Pro and iPad Air models to an external display with up to 6K of resolution, giving you fast access to windows and apps.

[To use Stage Manager](#), place your iPad in landscape orientation, connect it to an external display, open Control Center, then tap .

The window of the app you're using is positioned prominently in the center, so you can focus on it without going full screen. Your other apps are arranged on the left side in order of recent use.

In Stage Manager, you can do any of the following:

- Resize your windows to make them the perfect size for your task.
- Move your windows around on the center canvas.
- Access your favorite apps from the Dock, along with the ones you used recently.
- Use App Library to quickly find the app you want.
- Drag and drop windows from the side or open apps from the Dock to create app sets you can tap to get back to.

- Move files and windows between your supported iPad and your external display.

For more information, see [Move, resize, and organize windows with Stage Manager on iPad](#).

Play audio from iPad on HomePod and other wireless speakers

You can play audio from iPad on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPad on a wireless device

1. On your iPad, open an audio app, such as Podcasts  or Music , then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.

Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPad if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap  on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see [Pair a Bluetooth headphone, keyboard, game controller, or other device](#).

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPad, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

 **Siri:** Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"
- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"
- "What's playing in the kitchen?"
- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"

- "Add the living room speaker"
- "Remove the music from the kitchen"
- "Move the music to the den"

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPad screen.

1. Tap  in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you're listening to.
2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and [Apple TV User Guide](#).

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

Keyboards

iPad keyboards

iPad keyboards (sold separately) allow you to type while viewing the entire iPad screen. They magnetically attach to iPad—without switches, plugs, or pairing—and provide a lightweight protective cover when closed.

Find the right keyboard for your iPad

Keyboard	Compatible with
Magic Keyboard for iPad Pro	iPad Pro 11-inch (M4) iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)
Magic Keyboard for iPad Air and iPad Pro	iPad Air 11-inch (M2) iPad Air 13-inch (M2) iPad Air (4th and 5th generation) iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generation) iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generation)
Magic Keyboard Folio	iPad (10th generation)
Smart Keyboard Folio	iPad Air (4th and 5th generation) iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generation) iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generation)
Smart Keyboard	iPad (7th, 8th, and 9th generation) iPad Air (3rd generation) iPad Pro 10.5-inch

Switch between keyboards with iPad

With an Apple external keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On the external keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and [other language keyboards that you add](#).

When you select the emoji keyboard, you can do the following:

- *Search for an emoji:* Enter a commonly used word or phrase—such as “heart” or “smiley face”—in the search field above the emoji keyboard.
- *Enter an emoji:* Tap it; or use the arrow keys on the external keyboard to select it, then press Return.

 **Tip:** To quickly switch to the emoji keyboard, press -E on the Magic Keyboard for iPad or Smart Keyboard.

With Magic Keyboard for iPad and Smart Keyboard, you can also press  to choose between keyboards. If you want to use  to show only the emoji keyboard instead of switching languages, go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then turn on Press  for Emoji.

 **Tip:** If you added a Chinese, Korean, Japanese, or Hebrew keyboard, you can press the Caps Lock key to switch back and forth between Latin script and the other keyboard you’re using. To prevent use of the Caps Lock key for switching languages, go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then turn off Switch Languages using Caps Lock.

Switch to the onscreen keyboard

1. Do one of the following:
 - Tap  in the Shortcuts bar (at the bottom of the screen).
 - If you installed additional language keyboards, tap the language button next to the predictive text suggestions (opposite of the Dictation button  in the Shortcuts bar).
2. Tap Show Keyboard.

To hide the onscreen keyboard, tap .

Note: With Magic Keyboard for iPad and Smart Keyboard, you can use  to show only the emoji keyboard instead of switching languages. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then turn on Press  for Emoji. To switch between other language keyboards, press and hold the Control key, then press the Space bar.

Enter characters with diacritical marks while using an Apple external keyboard with iPad

If the Apple external keyboard you use with iPad doesn't include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you're typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:

- [Add a keyboard for a language](#) that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, [switch to that language keyboard](#).

For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, use  on Magic Keyboard for iPad to select Español (México).

- Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then [choose an alternative keyboard layout](#) that supports diacritical marks.

For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

- *Acute accent* (for example, é): Option-E.
- *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
- *Tilde* (for example, ñ): Option-N.
- *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, ü): Option-U.
- *Circumflex* (for example, ê): Option-I.

3. Press the letter.

For example, to enter ñ using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type an *n*.

Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ŭ in lǔxíng ("travel"), press Option-V, then type a v. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. [Switch](#) to the onscreen keyboard.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key.

3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
 4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, tap .
-

Dictate text while using an Apple external keyboard with iPad

You can dictate text instead of typing it on an Apple external keyboard.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply (Wi-Fi + Cellular models).

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard, then turn on Enable Dictation.
2. Tap the Dictation button  in the Shortcuts bar (at the bottom of the screen), then speak.

As you speak to insert text, iPad automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, "mind blown emoji" or "happy emoji").

3. When you finish, tap  at the bottom of the screen.
-

 **Tip:** To quickly switch to dictation, press -D on the Magic Keyboard for iPad or Smart Keyboard.

Use shortcuts on an Apple external keyboard with iPad

You can use the Shortcuts bar (at the bottom of the screen) and combination keystrokes known as *keyboard shortcuts* to quickly perform many common actions.

Use the Shortcuts bar to accept suggested words and spellings

While typing, you can do the following:

- Accept a suggested word by tapping it in the Shortcuts bar.
- Accept a suggestion highlighted in the Shortcuts bar by entering a space or punctuation. (If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation after entering a space to accept a suggestion, the space is deleted.)
- Reject the suggestions by tapping your original word (shown with quotation marks in the Shortcuts bar).

To turn off the suggestions, go to Settings  > General > Keyboard, then turn off Predictive Text.

Use the Shortcuts bar to switch between language, emoji, and onscreen keyboards

You can use the Shortcuts bar to switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, [other language keyboards that you add](#), and the onscreen keyboard.

1. Do one of the following:

- Tap  in the Shortcuts bar.
- If you installed additional language keyboards, tap the language button next to the predictive text suggestions (opposite of the Dictation button  in the Shortcuts bar).

2. Choose an option.

Use the Shortcuts bar for other shortcuts

- *Use app-specific shortcuts:* Buttons on the outer edges of the Shortcuts bar vary depending on the app you're using or the task you're doing. Each app is different—try out the Shortcuts bar to see what you can do.
- *Change keyboard settings:* Tap  (or the language button that replaced it), then tap Keyboard Settings.
- *Minimize the Shortcuts bar:* Tap  (or the language button that replaced it), then tap Minimize. To see the full Shortcuts bar, tap the minimized version.
- *Dictate text:* Tap the Dictation button , then speak. When you're finished, tap  at the bottom of the screen.

Use keyboard shortcuts

You can use keyboard shortcuts on an Apple external keyboard to perform the following actions on iPad:

- *Quickly switch between apps:* Press and hold the Command key, then press Tab until you reach the app you want to open.
- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.
- *Navigate between lists, text fields, and more:* Press Tab to navigate between areas of an app. For example, in Notes, with the Folders list showing, press Tab to switch between the Folders list, the Notes list, and the search field.
- *View multitasking and other systemwide shortcuts:* (Magic Keyboard for iPad and Smart Keyboard) Press and hold , then tap categories below the list.
- *View shortcuts for the app you're using:* Press and hold the Command key, then tap categories below the list.

You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

To use additional keyboard shortcuts, go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See [Control iPad with an external keyboard](#).

Note: You can also set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type "omw" to enter "On my way!" See [Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPad](#).

You can also accept suggested words before you finish typing them. See [Use predictive text on iPad](#).

Choose an alternative layout for an Apple external keyboard with iPad

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on your Apple external keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and [enter diacritical marks](#) for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

-
1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.
 2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.
-

Change typing assistance options for an Apple external keyboard with iPad

You can change options for auto-correction, smart punctuation, and more.

Change typing assistance options for an external keyboard

Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
 - *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
 - *Turn “.” Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.
-

Change typing assistance options for all keyboards

You can turn on or off special typing features—such as predictive text and smart punctuation—that assist you when you type. These settings apply to your onscreen keyboard and external keyboard.

1. Go to Settings > General, then tap Keyboard.
2. In the list below All Keyboards, turn typing features on or off.

For several options, including auto-correction and auto-capitalization, you can specify different settings for your external keyboard in Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.

Trackpads

Connect Magic Trackpad to iPad

You can connect Magic Trackpad, including Magic Trackpad 2, to your iPad (Magic Trackpad sold separately).

Pair Magic Trackpad

1. Make sure Magic Trackpad is turned on and charged.
2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Trackpad is already paired with your Mac or another iPad, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Trackpad to your iPad. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See [Unpair a Bluetooth device](#).
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device, then click Remove.

Reconnect Magic Trackpad to iPad

Magic Trackpad disconnects when you turn its switch to Off, or when you move it or iPad out of Bluetooth® range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the trackpad switch to On, or bring the trackpad and iPad back into range, then click the trackpad.

Trackpad gestures for iPad

You can use Magic Trackpad or the trackpad built into the Magic Keyboard for iPad and the Magic Keyboard Folio, to open apps, go to the Home Screen, open Slide Over, and more (all trackpads sold separately).

When your iPad is near your Mac (macOS 12.3 or later required on supported models), you can also [share a trackpad](#) between both devices. Many of the trackpad gestures in the following tables are supported by Mac trackpads.

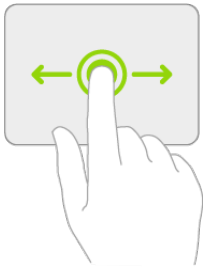
Trackpad gestures for Magic Trackpad, Magic Trackpad 2, Magic Keyboard for iPad, and Magic Keyboard Folio



Click. Press with one finger until you feel a click.



Click and hold. Press and hold with one finger.

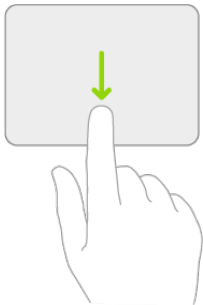


Drag. Click and hold an item, then slide your finger across the trackpad to move it.



Wake iPad. Click the trackpad.

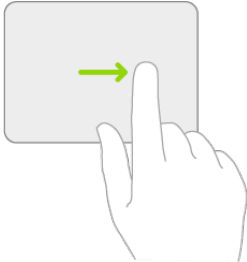
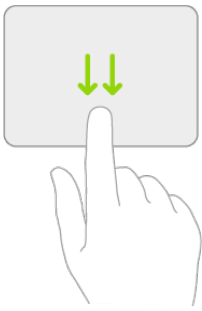
Or, if you're using an external keyboard, press any key.



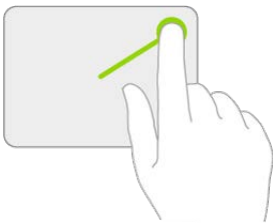
Open the Dock. Use one finger to swipe the pointer past the bottom of the screen.

Go Home. Use one finger to swipe the pointer past the bottom of the screen. After the Dock appears, swipe the pointer past the bottom of the screen again.

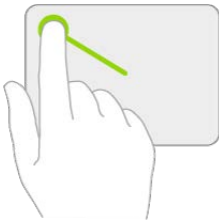
Alternatively, click the bar at the bottom of the screen (on an iPad with Face ID).



View Slide Over. Use one finger to swipe the pointer past the right edge of the screen. To hide Slide Over, swipe right again.

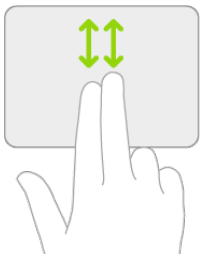


Open Control Center. Use one finger to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top right, then click.
Or, select the status icons at the top right, then swipe up with one finger.

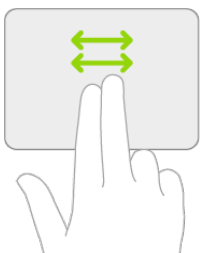


Open Notification Center. Use one finger to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top left, then click.
Or, use one finger to move the pointer past the top of the screen near the middle.

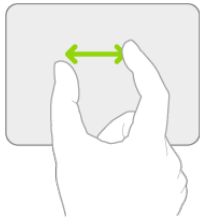
Additional gestures for Magic Trackpad 2, Magic Keyboard for iPad, and Magic Keyboard Folio



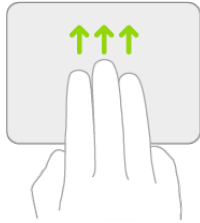
Scroll up or down. Swipe two fingers up or down.



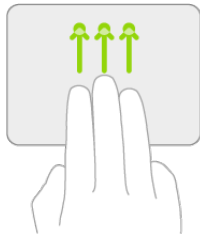
Scroll left or right. Swipe two fingers left or right.



Zoom. Place two fingers near each other. Pinch open to zoom in, or pinch closed to zoom out.

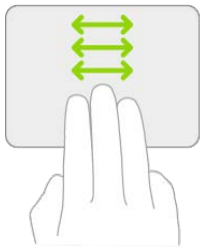


Go Home. Swipe up with three fingers.

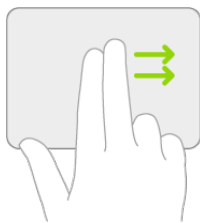


Open the App Switcher. Swipe up with three fingers, pausing before you lift your fingers.

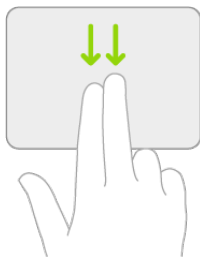
Or, pinch four fingers together, pausing before you lift your fingers.



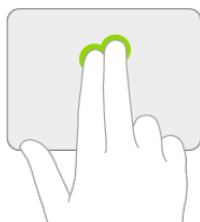
Switch between open apps. Swipe left or right with three fingers.



Open Today View. When the Home Screen or the Lock Screen is visible, use two fingers to swipe right.



Open search from the Home Screen. Swipe down with two fingers.



Secondary click. Click with two fingers to show the quick actions menu for items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, and the Camera button in Control Center.

Or, if you're using an external keyboard, you can press the Control key while you click the trackpad.

Change trackpad settings on iPad

You can change how you use a trackpad to interact with items on the iPad screen.

1. Go to Settings  > General, then choose one of the following, depending on your accessories:
 - Trackpad
 - Trackpad & Mouse
 2. Do any of the following:
 - *Change the tracking speed:* Drag the slider to set the tracking speed of the pointer when you move it across the screen.
 - *Turn Natural Scrolling on or off:* With this option selected, the contents on the screen move in the same direction as your finger.
 - *Turn Tap to Click on or off:* If you select this option, lightly tapping the trackpad with one finger has the same effect as pressing the trackpad until it clicks.
 - *Turn Two-Finger Secondary Click on or off:* With this option selected, you click with two fingers to [show the quick actions menu](#) for items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, or the Camera button in Control Center.
-

Note: You can also change the appearance of the pointer, such as its color, shape, and size. See [Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPad](#).

Mouse devices

Connect a mouse to iPad

You can connect Magic Mouse, another Bluetooth® mouse, or a USB mouse to your iPad.

Note: Mouse devices are sold separately. Not all mouse devices are fully compatible with all models of iPad.

Pair Magic Mouse or other Bluetooth mouse

1. For Magic Mouse, make sure the mouse is turned on and charged.

For any other Bluetooth mouse, follow the instructions that came with the mouse to put it in discovery mode.

2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

If you're asked for a PIN when you pair Magic Mouse, type "0000" (four zeros), then tap Pair.

Note: If the mouse is already paired with your Mac or another iPad, you must unpair them before you can connect the mouse to your iPad. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See [Unpair a Bluetooth device](#).
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device, then click Remove.

Reconnect a Bluetooth mouse to iPad

The mouse disconnects when you turn the switch on the mouse to Off or when you move the mouse or iPad out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the mouse switch to On, or bring the mouse and iPad back into range, then click the mouse.

Connect a USB mouse

With the appropriate cable or adapters, you can connect various third-party mouse devices with iPad using USB and USB-based receivers. Refer to the device manufacturer's instructions.

Mouse actions and gestures for iPad

You can use a mouse to open apps, go to the Home Screen, open Slide Over, and more (mouse devices sold separately).

When your iPad is near your Mac (macOS 12.3 or later required on supported models), you can also [share a mouse](#) between both devices.

Note: Not all mouse devices are fully compatible with all models of iPad.

Mouse actions



Click. Press the mouse until you feel a click.



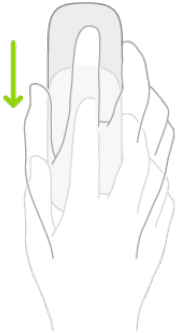
Click and hold. Press and hold the mouse.



Drag. Click and hold an item, then move the mouse.

Wake iPad. Click the mouse.

Or, if you're using an external keyboard, press any key.

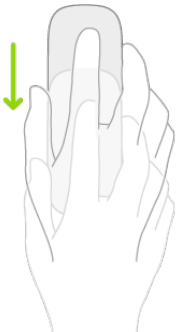


Open the Dock. Move the mouse to position the pointer at the bottom of the screen.



Go Home. Move the mouse to position the pointer at the bottom of the screen. After the Dock appears, move the pointer past the bottom of the screen.

Or, click the bar at the bottom of the screen (on an iPad with Face ID).



Open the App Switcher. With the Home Screen visible, move the pointer past the bottom of the screen.

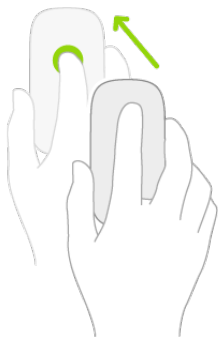
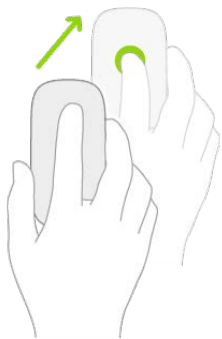
Or from an app, drag the bar at the bottom of the screen toward the middle of the screen and pause (on an iPad with Face ID).



View Slide Over. Use the mouse to move the pointer past the right edge of the screen. To hide Slide Over, move the pointer past the right edge again.

Open Control Center. Use the mouse to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top right, then click.

Or, move the pointer past the top-right corner of the screen.



Open Notification Center. Use the mouse to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top left, then click.

Or, use the mouse to move the pointer past the top of the screen (near the middle).

Mouse gestures for Magic Mouse 2



Scroll up or down. Slide a finger up or down on the surface of the mouse.



Scroll left or right. Slide a finger left or right on the surface of the mouse.



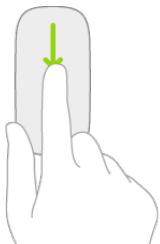
Secondary click. Use a finger on one side of the mouse to show the quick actions menu when clicking items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, or the Camera button in Control Center.

Note: To turn on Secondary click and choose which side of the mouse to use, go to Settings  > General > Trackpad & Mouse > Secondary Click.

If you're using an external keyboard, you can press the Control key while you click the mouse. On a multi-button mouse, click the second button.



Open Today View. When the Home Screen or the Lock Screen is visible, swipe right on the surface of the mouse.



Open search from the Home Screen. Swipe down on the surface of the mouse.

Change mouse settings on iPad

You can change how you use a mouse to interact with items on the iPad screen.

1. Go to Settings  > General, then select Trackpad & Mouse.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Change the tracking speed:* Drag the slider to set the tracking speed of the pointer when you move it across the screen.
 - *Turn Natural Scrolling on or off:* With this option selected, the contents on the screen move in the same direction as your finger.
 - *Specify a finger to use for Secondary Click:* You can specify either the right or left finger to [show the quick actions menu](#) when you click items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, or the Camera button in Control Center. To turn off Secondary Click, choose Off (Magic Mouse 2).
-

Note: You can also change the appearance of the pointer, such as its color, shape, and size. See [Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPad](#).

Connect external storage devices to iPad

You can use the Files app  and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPad.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPad using a compatible connector or adapter.

Depending on your iPad model and external device, you may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

On models that support Thunderbolt / USB 4, you can connect multiple USB drives and other Thunderbolt devices to each other, and then connect the chain of devices to the charging port on your iPad.

Note: An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.

Note: You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See [Import and export photos and videos on iPad](#).

- *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.
- *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPad.

External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPad. On models that support Thunderbolt / USB 4, if an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPad has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

Set up and use Bluetooth accessories on iPad

Using a Bluetooth® connection, you can use third-party devices such as wireless keyboards, headphones, speakers, car kits, game controllers, and more with iPad.

Note: iPad must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth device.

Pair a Bluetooth headphone, keyboard, game controller, or other device

1. Follow the instructions that came with the device to put it in discovery mode.

Note: To pair AirPods, see the instructions for your model in the “Pair and connect” section in the [AirPods User Guide](#).

2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

iPad must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth device.

Customize a wireless game controller

After you pair a compatible game controller, you can customize it for supported games from Apple Arcade and the App Store.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Game Controller.
2. Tap the buttons you want to change.
3. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

Note: Apple Arcade availability varies by country or region.

Play audio from iPad on a Bluetooth audio device

1. On your iPad, open an audio app, such as Music, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose your Bluetooth device.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

The playback destination returns to iPad if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPad, see [Use headphone audio-level features on iPad](#).

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information for iPad](#).

Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth devices

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth devices by specifying the device type (such as headphone, speaker, hearing aid, and more) on your iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap  next to the name of the device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

Unpair a Bluetooth device

Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, tap the information button  next to the name of the device, then tap Forget This Device.

If you don't see the Devices list, make sure Bluetooth is turned on.

If you have AirPods and you tap Forget This Device, they're automatically removed from other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Disconnect from Bluetooth devices

To quickly disconnect from all Bluetooth devices without turning Bluetooth off, open Control Center, then tap .

To learn about Bluetooth privacy settings on iPad, see the Apple Support article [If an app would like to use Bluetooth on your device](#). If you have trouble connecting a Bluetooth device, see the Apple Support article [If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone or iPad](#).

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPad may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPad. Turning on airplane mode may eliminate audio interference between iPad and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPad and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

Apple Watch with Fitness+ on iPad

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPad, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Watch sold separately; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.)

To learn more, see [All about Apple Fitness+](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

Print from iPad

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, Safari, and Freeform. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

iPad and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article [About AirPrint](#).

Print a document

Tap , , , or  (depending on the app you're using), then tap Print. (Swipe up if you don't see Print.)

See the status of a print job

Open the App Switcher, then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

Apple Polishing Cloth

If your iPad Pro 11-inch (M4) or iPad Pro 13-inch (M4) has nano-texture glass (optional and only available on models with 1 TB and 2 TB of storage), use the included Apple Polishing Cloth to clean it.

Use iPad with iPhone, Mac, and PC

Share your internet connection from iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular)

You can use Personal Hotspot to share a cellular internet connection from your iPad to other devices. Personal Hotspot is useful when the other devices don't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

Note: Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPad model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Set up Personal Hotspot on iPad

Go to Settings  > Cellular, tap Set Up Personal Hotspot, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: If Cellular Data is turned on in Settings > Cellular, but you don't see Set Up Personal Hotspot as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

Connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot

You can use Wi-Fi, a USB cable, or Bluetooth® to connect a Mac or PC to your Personal Hotspot. Do one of the following:

- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a Mac:* See [Connect iPad to the internet](#).
- *Use Wi-Fi to connect from a PC:* On your PC, follow the manufacturer directions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.
- *Use USB:* See [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable](#).
- *Use Bluetooth:* To connect from a Mac, see Use Bluetooth to connect your Mac and iPad.

To connect from a PC, follow the manufacturer directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

- For more information about connecting a Mac, see [Use an iPhone or iPad to connect your Mac to the internet](#) in the macOS User Guide.
-

Connect iPhone or another iPad to your Personal Hotspot

On the other device, go to Settings > Wi-Fi, choose your other device from the list of available networks, then enter the Personal Hotspot password (if prompted).

For more information about connecting an iPhone, see [Join a Personal Hotspot](#) in the iPhone User Guide.

Turn off Personal Hotspot or change the password

Go to Settings > Personal Hotspot, then do one of the following:

- *Change the password:* Tap Wi-Fi Password and follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Turn off Personal Hotspot:* Turn off Allow Others to Join. All devices using your Personal Hotspot are disconnected.

When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, a blue band appears at the top of your iPad screen, and the Personal Hotspot icon  appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

Note: If you're signed in with the same Apple ID and you've turned on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth on both devices, you can connect the devices without entering a password.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPad, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See [View or change cellular data settings on iPad \(Wi-Fi + Cellular models\)](#).

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See [Set up Family Sharing on iPad](#).

Make and receive phone calls on iPad

You can make and receive calls on your iPad by using Wi-Fi Calling to relay phone calls through your iPhone (iOS 9 or later required).

Cellular charges might apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.

Important: Wi-Fi + Cellular models do not support cellular phone service—they support cellular data transmission only. To make phone calls on any iPad model, you need to use Wi-Fi Calling and an iPhone.

Before you begin

On your iPad and your other devices, do the following (iOS 9, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.10, or later required):

- [Set up FaceTime](#) on both your iPhone and your iPad.
- Sign in with the same Apple ID on both devices.

Allow phone calls on your iPad from your iPhone

You first set up your iPhone, and then set up your iPad.

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Cellular.
2. If your iPhone has Dual SIMs, choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Calls on Other Devices, turn on Allow Calls on Other Devices, then choose your iPad along with any other devices on which you'd like to make and receive calls.

This allows iPad and other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone and connected to Wi-Fi.

- Tap Wi-Fi Calling, turn on Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone, then turn on Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices.

This allows iPad and other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID to make and receive calls even when your iPhone isn't nearby.

4. On your iPad, go to Settings > FaceTime, then turn on FaceTime and Calls from iPhone. If you're asked, turn on Wi-Fi Calling.
 - *Make a call:* Tap a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, enter a contact or phone number, then tap .
 - *Receive a call:* Swipe or tap the notification to answer or ignore the call.

Note: If you enable Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location.

Make or receive a phone call on your iPad

- *Make a call:* Tap or click a phone number in Contacts, Calendar, FaceTime, Messages, Search, or Safari. Or open FaceTime, enter a contact or phone number, then tap .

If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPad with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.

- *Receive a call:* Swipe, tap, or click the notification to answer or ignore the call.

For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article [Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling](#).

Use iPad as a second display for your Mac

With Sidecar, you can extend the workspace of your Mac by using iPad as a second display. The extended workspace allows you to do the following:

- Use different apps on the different screens.
- Use the same app on both screens. For example, you can view your artwork on your Mac screen while you use Apple Pencil and an app's tools and palettes on iPad.

COMMENT: #ba #apps



- Mirror the screens so that Mac and iPad display the same content.

Sidecar requires macOS 10.15 or later and iPadOS 13 or later on supported models.

Set up Sidecar

1. Make sure you're signed in with the same Apple ID on your Mac and iPad.
 2. Use one of the following connections:
 - *Wireless*: Make sure you've turned on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® on your Mac, and you've turned on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth on your iPad. They need to be within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
 - *USB*: [Connect your Mac and iPad](#) using the appropriate USB cable.
 3. On your Mac, do one of the following:
 - *macOS 13*: Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Displays , click , then select your iPad from the list below "Mirror or extend to."
 - *macOS 10.15 to 12.5*: Choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click Displays , click Add Display, then select your iPad from the list below "Mirror or extend to."
-

Use Sidecar

1. If you're not already connected to your iPad, do one of the following:

- *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Displays , click , then select your iPad from the list below "Mirror or extend to."
- *macOS 10.15 to 12.5:* Choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click Displays , click Add Display, then select your iPad from the list below "Mirror or extend to."

2. Do any of the following:

- *Move a window between screens:* Drag the window, or hold the pointer over the green button in the top-left corner of the window, then choose "Move to."
- *Use the sidebar on iPad:* With your finger or Apple Pencil, tap icons in the sidebar to show or hide the menu bar , the Dock , or the keyboard . Or tap one or more modifier keys, such as Ctrl , to use keyboard shortcuts.
- *Use the Touch Bar on iPad:* With your finger or Apple Pencil, tap any button in the Touch Bar. The buttons available vary depending on the app or task.
- *On iPad, switch between the Mac desktop and the iPad Home Screen:* To show the Home Screen, swipe up from the bottom edge of your iPad. To return to the Mac desktop, tap the Sidecar icon  in the Dock on your iPad.
- *Change the screen arrangement or mirror the displays (macOS 13):* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Displays  in the sidebar. On the right, scroll down, then click Arrange.
- *Change the screen arrangement or mirror the displays (macOS 10.15 to 12.5):* Go to Apple menu > System Preferences, click Displays, then make your changes.

3. When you're ready to stop using your iPad, do one of the following:

- *On iPad:* Tap the Disconnect icon  at the bottom of the sidebar.
- *On Mac:* Click Control Center  in the menu bar, click Display, then deselect your iPad from the list below "Mirror or extend to."

For more information about using Sidecar, including how to set Sidecar options from your Mac, see [Use your iPad as a second display for your Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.

Use iPad as a webcam for Apple TV

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPad as a webcam or microphone for your Apple TV 4K, and take advantage of the powerful iPad camera and video effects.

Here are some things you can do with Continuity Camera on Apple TV:

- [Use your iPad as a webcam in FaceTime.](#)
 - [Sing along to Apple Music and appear onscreen with visual effects.](#)
-

Use a keyboard and mouse or trackpad across your Mac and iPad with Universal Control

With Universal Control, you can use the keyboard and mouse or trackpad connected to your Mac to work across your Mac and iPad when they're near each other. For example, you can open and use apps, enter text, and drag items across devices. If an external keyboard and mouse or trackpad are connected to your iPad, you can use them to work across both devices too.

To use Universal Control, make sure of the following:

- You're using supported models of Mac and iPad.
 - Your Mac has macOS 12.3 or later installed.
 - You're signed in with the same Apple ID using [two-factor authentication](#) on both devices.
 - On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
 - On your iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
-

Connect your Mac and iPad to use Universal Control

Do one of the following:

- On your Mac, use your mouse or trackpad to move the pointer to right or left edge of the screen closest to your iPad, pause, then move the pointer slightly past the edge of the screen. When a border appears at the edge of the iPad screen, continue moving the pointer to the iPad screen.

- On your Mac, click Control Center  in the menu bar, click Display, then choose your iPad (below "Link keyboard and mouse to"). Use your mouse or trackpad to move the pointer past the edge of the Mac screen until it appears on your iPad.

After you establish a connection, you can move the pointer across screens until one of your devices goes to sleep or you disconnect them.

Many actions and gestures supported by iPad for external mouse devices and trackpads work with your Mac mouse or trackpad. See [Mouse actions and gestures for iPad](#) and [Trackpad gestures for iPad](#). With your Mac keyboard, you can also use many features supported by iPad for external keyboards. See the keyboard topics in the Accessories chapter, beginning with [Switch between keyboards with iPad](#).

Change the screen arrangement

The direction in which you move the pointer when establishing the Universal Control connection determines which side of the display you use to move the pointer across devices. You can adjust this by changing the arrangement of the devices in System Settings (macOS 13) or System Preferences (macOS 12.3 to 12.5).

1. On your Mac, do one of the following:
 - *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Displays  in the sidebar. On the right, scroll down, then click Arrange.
 - *macOS 12.3-12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Displays .
2. Drag the iPad image to the desired position.

Disconnect Universal Control between your Mac and iPad

Do one of the following:

- Press the top button on your iPad to put it to sleep.
- On your Mac, click Control Center  in the menu bar, click Display, then deselect your iPad (below "Link keyboard and mouse to").

When they're nearby and their screens are unlocked, your Mac and iPad automatically reconnect. To prevent this, do one of the following:

- *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Displays  in the sidebar. On the right, click Advanced, then turn off "Automatically reconnect to any nearby Mac or iPad."

- *macOS 12.3-12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Displays , click Universal Control, then deselect the "Automatically reconnect to any nearby Mac or iPad" checkbox.
-

Turn off Universal Control

On your Mac, you can turn off Universal Control to prevent the use of your Mac keyboard and mouse or trackpad across devices.

1. Do one of the following:

- *macOS 13:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Displays  in the sidebar, then click.
- *macOS 12.3 to 12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Displays , then click Universal Control.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Turn off all Universal Control connections:* Deselect the "Allow your pointer and keyboard to move between any nearby Mac or iPad" checkbox.
- *Prevent a connection when moving the pointer to the edge of the screen:* Deselect the "Push through the edge of a display to connect to a nearby Mac or iPad" checkbox.

To prevent connecting your iPad keyboard and mouse or trackpad to your Mac, on iPad go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Handoff, then turn off Cursor and Keyboard.

With Universal Control, you can work across up to three devices.

See [Use one keyboard and mouse to control Mac and iPad](#) in the macOS User Guide.

Hand off tasks between iPad and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start something on one device (iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch) and then pick it up on another device right where you left off. For example, you can start answering an email on your iPad, then finish it in Mail on your Mac. You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Calendar, Contacts, and Safari. Some third-party apps might also work with Handoff.

Before you begin

To hand off tasks between iPad and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
 - On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
 - On your iPad and on another iPhone or iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
 - Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
 - Each device has the minimum required software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.10, watchOS 1.0, or later.
-

Hand off from another device to your iPad

1. From any app, swipe up from the bottom edge of the screen and pause to reveal the Dock.
 2. On the right end of the Dock, tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app on iPad.
-

Hand off from iPad to another device

On the other device, click or tap the Handoff icon to continue working in the app.

The Handoff icon of the app you're using on iPad appears in the following locations on other devices:

- *Mac*: The right end of the Dock (or at the bottom, depending on the Dock position).
 - *iPhone or iPod touch*: At the bottom of the App Switcher screen.
 - *iPad*: The right end of the Dock.
-

Turn off Handoff on your devices

- *iPad, iPhone, and iPod touch*: Go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Handoff.
 - *macOS 13*: Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click General in the sidebar, click AirDrop & Handoff on the right, then turn off Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices.
 - *macOS 12.5 or earlier*: Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click General, then deselect "Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices."
-

 **Tip:** When Handoff is on, you can [use Universal Clipboard](#) to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

Cut, copy, and paste between iPad and other devices

You can use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy content (a block of text or an image, for example) on your iPad, then paste it on iPhone, another iPad, iPod touch, or Mac computer, and vice versa.

Note: For information about moving items within an app or copying items between apps only on your iPad, see [Move and copy items with drag and drop on iPad](#). For information about cutting, copying, and pasting text within or between apps only on your iPad, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

Before you begin

To cut or copy and paste between iPad and another device, make sure of the following:

- You're signed in with the same Apple ID on both devices.
- On your Mac, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth®, and Handoff.
- On your iPad and on another iPhone or iPad, you've turned on Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Handoff.
- Your devices are within Bluetooth range of one another (about 33 feet or 10 meters).
- Each device has the minimum relevant software version installed: iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, or later.

Copy, cut, or paste

- *Copy:* Pinch closed with three fingers.
- *Cut:* Pinch closed with three fingers two times.
- *Paste:* Pinch open with three fingers.

You can also touch and hold a selection, then tap Cut, Copy, or Paste.

Important: You need to cut, copy, and paste your content within a short period of time.

For more information about selecting text or placing the insertion point, see [Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPad](#).

Use AirPlay to stream video or mirror the screen of your iPad

You can use AirPlay to stream videos, photos, and audio from your iPad to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror exactly what's on your iPad screen.

Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPad

1. On a Mac, do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.) Click AirDrop & Handoff on the right, then turn on AirPlay Receiver.
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click Sharing, then select and turn on AirPlay Receiver.

2. Choose an option for "Allow AirPlay for":

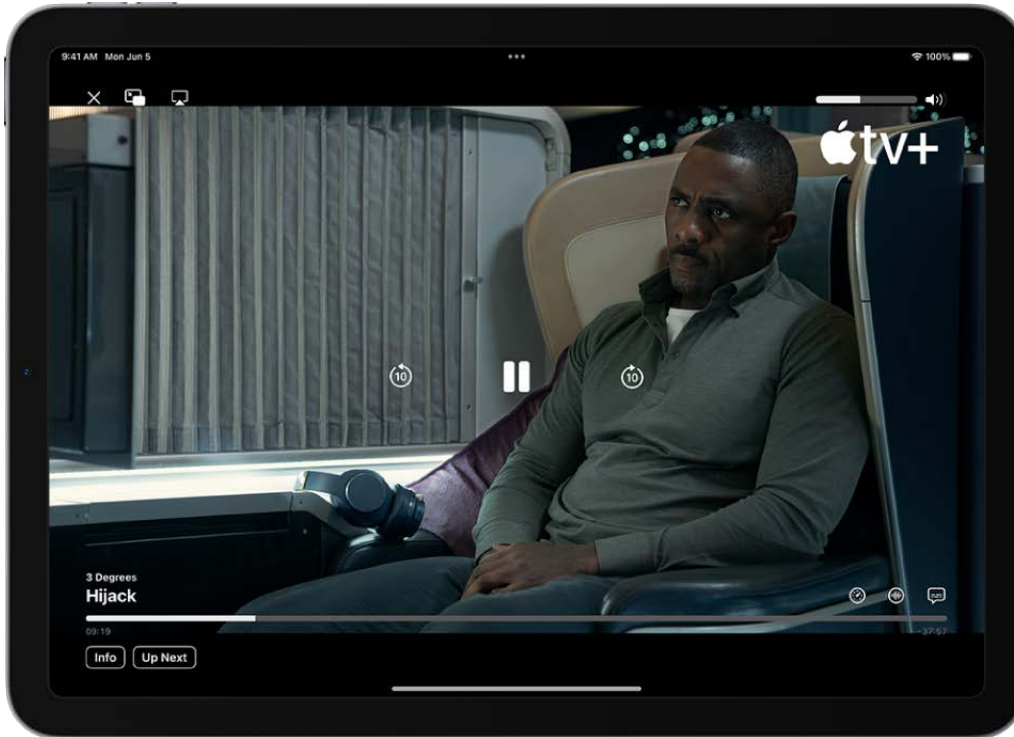
- To allow only devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID as on the Mac to stream to the Mac, select "Current user."
- To allow others, select "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone.

To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password in the text field.

If you choose the option "Anyone on the same network" or "Everyone," and someone is signed in to their device with a different Apple ID than on the Mac, an AirPlay request initially requires acceptance on the Mac and verification on the other device. On the Mac, accept the AirPlay request. If the Mac displays an AirPlay code, enter the code on the other device.

Stream photos or videos from your iPad to a Mac or TV

1. Connect your iPad to the same Wi-Fi network as your Apple TV 4K , AirPlay-compatible smart TV, or Mac.
2. Find the video that you want to stream.
3. Tap AirPlay . In some apps, you might need to tap a different button first. For example, in the Photos app , tap Share , then tap AirPlay.



COMMENT: #ba #tv-movies

4. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPad screen.

To show video playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.

To stop streaming, tap AirPlay in the app that you're streaming from, then tap your iPhone or iPad from the list.

Use AirPlay in your hotel room

If you stay in a hotel room with a TV that supports AirPlay, you can use it to play movies, TV shows, music, and more from your iPad (iPadOS 17.3 or later).

1. If it's not already on, turn on the room's TV and locate the AirPlay QR code.

2. Open Camera , [scan the QR code with your iPad camera](#), then follow the onscreen instructions to connect to your hotel Wi-Fi (if you're not already connected) and the room's TV.
3. Use your iPad to display content on the TV screen. You can do any of the following:
 - *Play a movie or TV show:* Find the video that you want to stream, tap , then choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
 - *View photos or videos:* Open the Photos app , tap , tap , then choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
 - *Play audio:* Open an audio app such as Music , tap , then choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
 - *Mirror your iPad screen:* Open Control Center, tap , then choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
4. To stop streaming or mirroring, tap the AirPlay or mirroring button (, , or ) on your iPad, then tap your iPad in the list or tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: AirPlay in hotels is available in certain countries and regions.

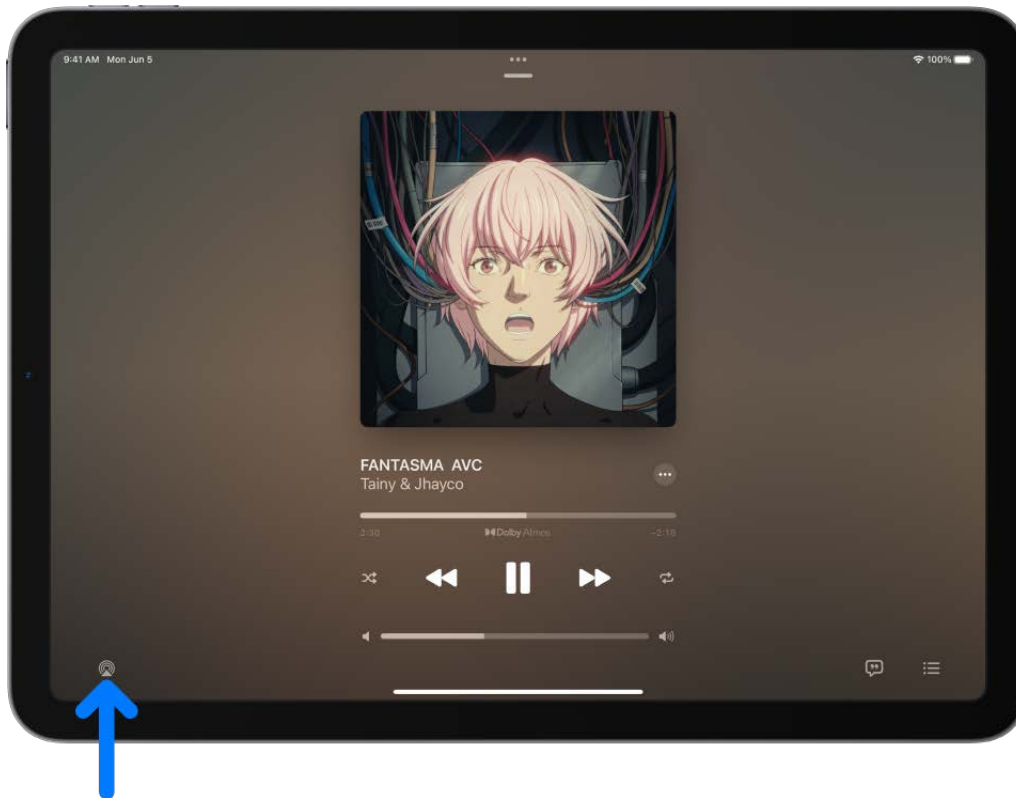
Mirror your iPad on a Mac or TV

1. Connect your iPad to the same Wi-Fi network as your Apple TV, AirPlay-compatible smart TV, or Mac.
2. Open Control Center on your iPad.
3. Tap , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

To switch back, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Play audio from iPad on Mac or TV

1. On your iPad, open an audio app, such as Podcasts  or Music , then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.



To select the playback destination, you can also tap  on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: Using AirPlay to stream to a Mac requires iPad Pro (2nd generation), iPad Air (3rd generation), iPad (6th generation), iPad mini (5th generation), or later, along with a supported Mac.

Older iPad models can share content at a lower resolution with supported Mac models when the "Allow AirPlay for" menu in Sharing preferences is set to or "Everyone" or "Anyone on the same network."

Use AirDrop on iPad to send items to nearby Apple devices

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to other nearby devices and Mac computers.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Transfers are encrypted for security, and the recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives.

Note: If you leave Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range after an AirDrop transfer is initiated, the transfer continues over the internet.

Before you begin

- Make sure that the recipient you're sending to is nearby and within Bluetooth range and that you both have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on.
- Check that the recipient you're sending to has their [AirDrop set to receive from Everyone or Contacts Only](#).
- If you're not in your recipient's contacts, have them set their AirDrop receiving setting to Everyone in order to receive the file.
- If you are in your recipient's contacts and they set AirDrop to receive from Contacts Only, they need to have your Apple ID email address or phone number included in your contact card for AirDrop to work.

Send an item using AirDrop

1. Open the item on your iPad, then tap , Share, AirDrop, , or another button that displays the app's sharing options.
2. Tap , then tap the AirDrop user you want to share with. (You can also use AirDrop to share between your own devices.)

To use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPad](#).

Allow others to send items to your iPad using AirDrop

1. Open Control Center, touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap .
2. Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.

Note: The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with minimum system requirements.

Turn off cellular data for AirDrop

Cellular data charges may apply when you use AirDrop.

If you don't want to use cellular data when you're out of Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range, go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then turn off Use Cellular Data.

Typically this is a one-time setting, but you might want to change it if, for example, you're traveling and want to avoid roaming charges.

Connect iPad and your computer with a cable

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPad to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a PC with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPad, connect iPad to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

Note: If an alert appears on your iPad asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. (See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).)

After you connect your iPad to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- [Set up iPad](#) for the first time.
 - [Share your internet connection from iPad \(Wi-Fi + Cellular\)](#) with your computer.
 - [Use your computer to erase all content and settings](#) from iPad.
 - [Update iPad](#) using your computer.
 - [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your Mac and iPad.
 - [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your PC and iPad.
-

The iPad battery charges when iPad is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

Transfer files between your iPad and computer

Transfer files between your iPad and your computer

There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPad and computer.

- *Quickly transfer files wirelessly:* See [Use AirDrop on iPad to send items to nearby Apple devices](#).
- *Use iCloud:* See [Automatically keep your files up to date with iCloud](#).
- *Use an external storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox:* See [Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPad](#).
- *Use a cable:* For Mac, see [Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPad](#). For PC, see [Transfer files between your PC and devices with iTunes](#).

Important: Transferring, sharing, or syncing might be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

Transfer files wirelessly between your iPad and computer with email, messages, or AirDrop

Use email to transfer files

- To transfer files using Mail on your iPad, see [Add email attachments in Mail on iPad](#) and [Download email attachments in Mail on iPad](#).
- To transfer files using Mail on your Mac, see [Add attachments to emails in Mail on Mac](#) and [Save email attachments in Mail on Mac](#).

Use text messages to transfer files

- To transfer files using Messages on your iPad, see [Send an item using AirDrop](#).
 - To transfer files using Messages on your Mac, see [Send photos and videos in Messages on Mac](#).
-

Use AirDrop to transfer files

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your iPad, see [Use AirDrop on iPad to send items to nearby Apple devices](#).
- To transfer files using AirDrop on your Mac, see [Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you](#).

Files sent to your iPad are located in the app where you saved the file or in the app that opens automatically when the file is received. Files sent to your Mac are located in the app where you saved the file or in the Downloads folder.

Transfer files or sync content between your iPad and computer with the Finder or iTunes

You can [connect your iPad to a computer](#) to do the following:

- Transfer files used by iPad apps that support file sharing.
- Sync supported content like movies and podcasts.

Depending on your computer, you use either the Finder or iTunes on your computer to sync content and transfer files.

Transfer files for supported apps

You can transfer files by copying them from one device to another using the Finder or iTunes. Only files from iPad apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *To transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See the Apple Support article [Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone](#).
- *To transfer files with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iOS or iPadOS device](#).

Sync supported content

Syncing with the Finder or iTunes keeps supported content up to date between your iPad and computer. For example, when you add a movie to your iPad, you can sync so that the movie also appears on your computer. After you set up syncing between your devices with a cable, you can set them to sync wirelessly and automatically whenever they're connected to the same Wi-Fi network.

You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, podcasts, photos, contacts, and calendars.

- *To sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See [Sync content between your Mac and iPad](#) in the macOS User Guide.
- *To sync content with your PC or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to sync your iPad with your computer](#).

If the files you want to share between your iPad and computer aren't supported by syncing or transferring with the Finder or iTunes, see [Transfer files between your iPad and your computer](#) for other options.

Automatically keep your files up to date on your iPad and computer with iCloud

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to iCloud appears on all devices that are signed in.

You can also access your information in iCloud from anywhere by using a supported web browser. See [System requirements for iCloud](#).

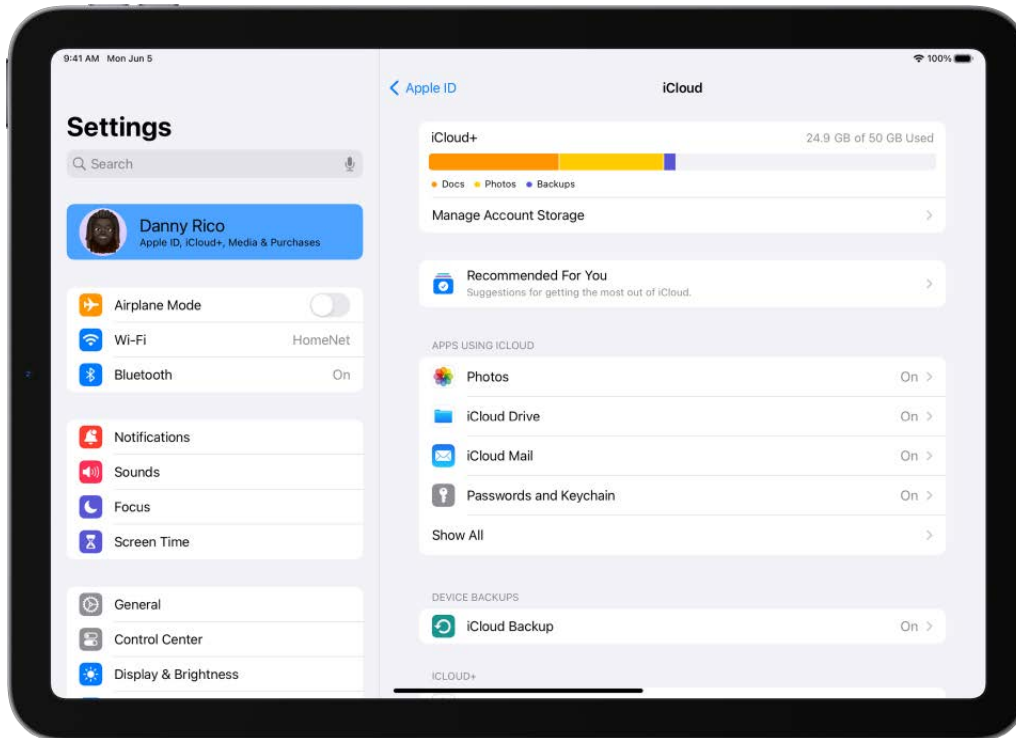
Important: OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be signed in with your Apple ID on both your iPad and your computer, along with any web browsers you might be using.

Set up iCloud on your iPad

1. On your iPad, go to Settings  > [your name].

If you don't see [your name], tap "Sign in to your [device]," then enter your Apple ID and password.

2. Tap iCloud, then turn on items you want to keep there.



For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your computer.

Set up iCloud on your Mac

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud features on Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPad.

Set up iCloud on your PC

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud](#) in the iCloud for Windows User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPad, then click Apply.

iCloud comes with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can [Subscribe to iCloud+ on iPad](#).

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. iCloud may not be available in all areas, and iCloud features may vary by area. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#). For information about features, go to apple.com/icloud/.

Transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service on iPad

Transfer files with an external storage device

1. Connect your iPad or computer to an external storage device, such as a USB drive or SD card.

To connect to iPad, you might need a cable adapter. See [Connect external storage devices to iPad](#).

Note: If an alert appears on iPad asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).

2. Use a supported app (like Files or Pages) to copy files to the storage device. See [Connect external devices or servers with Files on iPad](#).
 3. Disconnect the storage device, then connect it to the device where you want the copied files to appear.
 4. Copy the files to the connected device. See [Connect and use other storage devices with Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.
-

Transfer files with a file server

Note: If you have a Mac, you can set it up as a file server on a local network, such as your Wi-Fi network. See [Set up file sharing on Mac](#) in the macOS User Guide.

1. Connect to the file server from your iPad [using the Files app](#).
 2. Connect your Mac or PC to the file server (unless your computer is the file server). See [Connect your Mac to shared computers and servers](#) in the macOS User Guide.
 3. Use the file server to transfer files between your iPad and computer.
 4. When you're finished, disconnect your iPad from the file server by tapping  next to the server.
-

Transfer files with a cloud storage service like Box or Dropbox

Note: Subscription fees might apply.

1. On your iPad or computer, follow the instructions from your cloud storage service to upload the files you want to share.
2. To access your shared files on iPad, open Files, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations.

To access the shared files on a computer, follow the service's instructions.

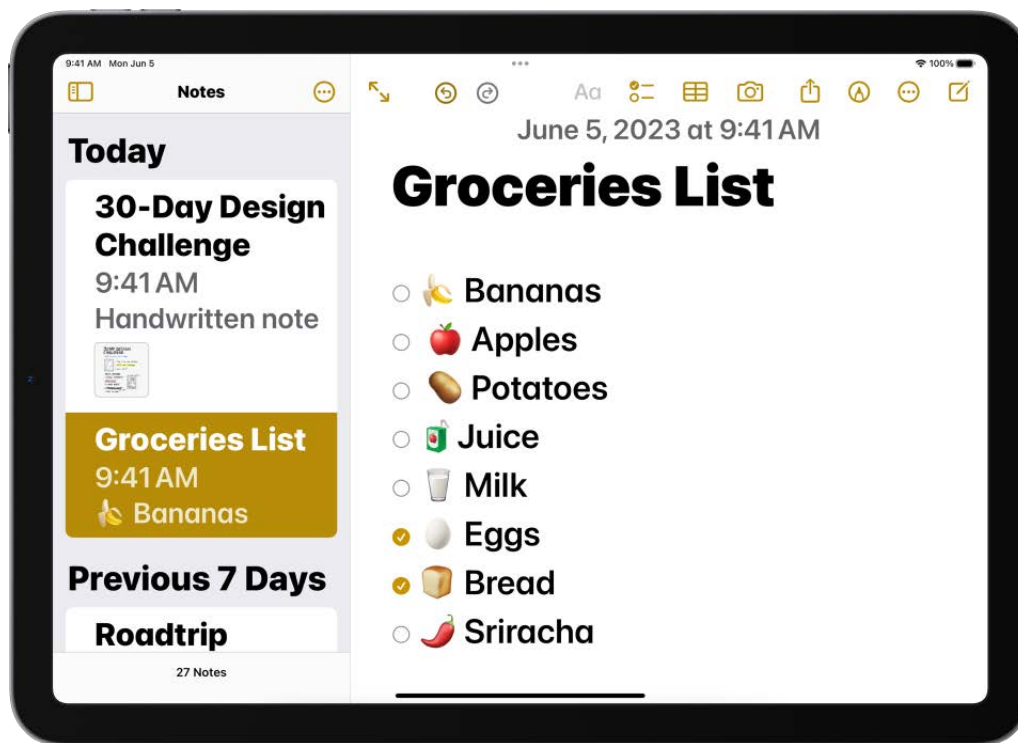
Accessibility

Get started with accessibility features on iPad

iPad provides many accessibility features and settings to support your vision, mobility, hearing, speech, and cognitive needs.

These features make your iPad easier to use, whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

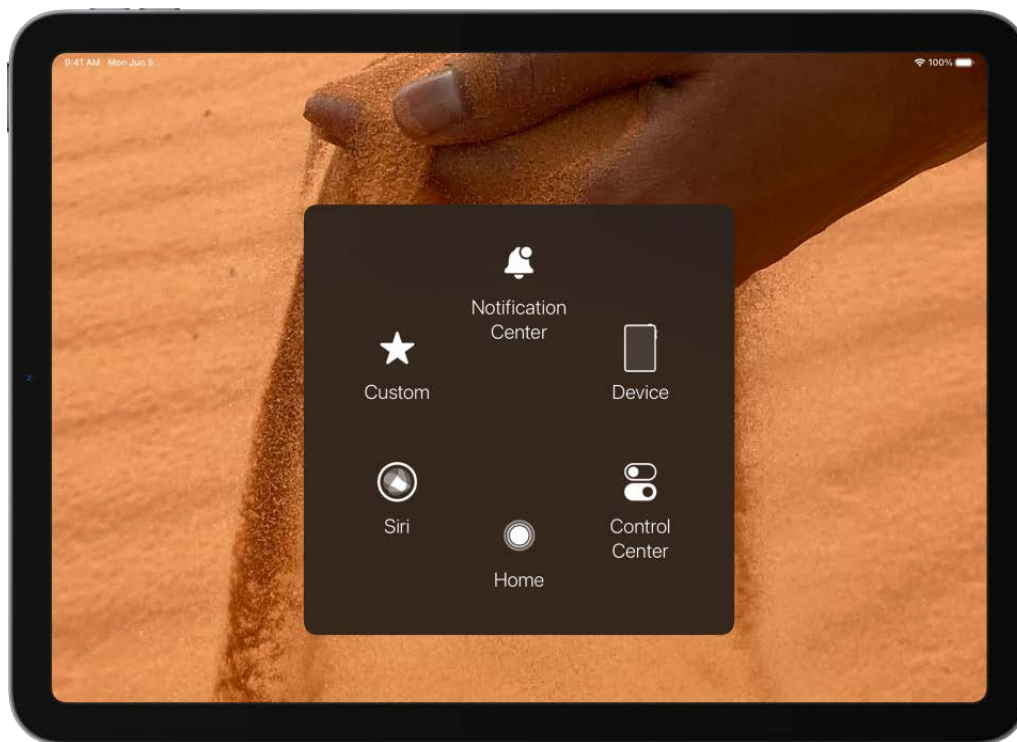
You can set many of these up when you turn on your iPad for the first time (see [Turn on accessibility features to set up your iPad](#)), or you can turn them on later.



Vision

You can change screen colors and text size, zoom in, reduce transparency, and more. You can also hear what's onscreen, or use VoiceOver to interact with your iPad.

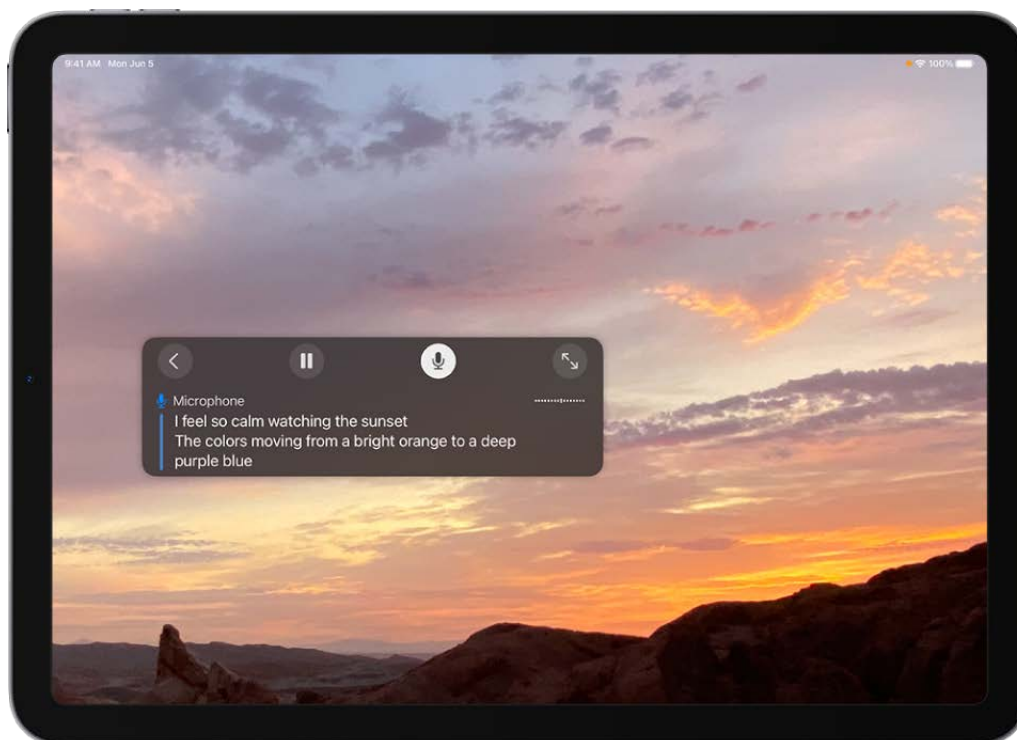
Learn more about [vision-related accessibility features](#)



Mobility

You can navigate your iPad hands-free, or you can use your voice or connect a switch, mouse, or other input. You can also control other devices, customize gestures and alerts, and adjust how sensitively iPad responds to your tap or touch.

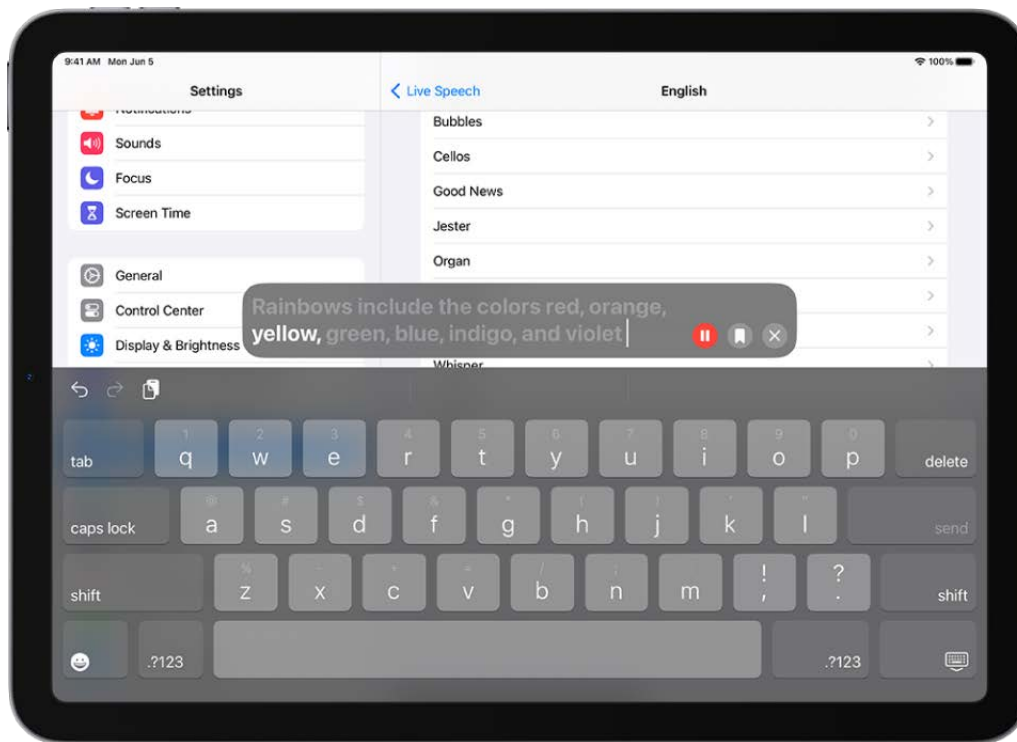
Learn more about [mobility-related accessibility features](#)



Hearing

You can adjust audio for noisier contexts or turn speech into text. You can also change how iPad alerts you, or have it recognize sounds.

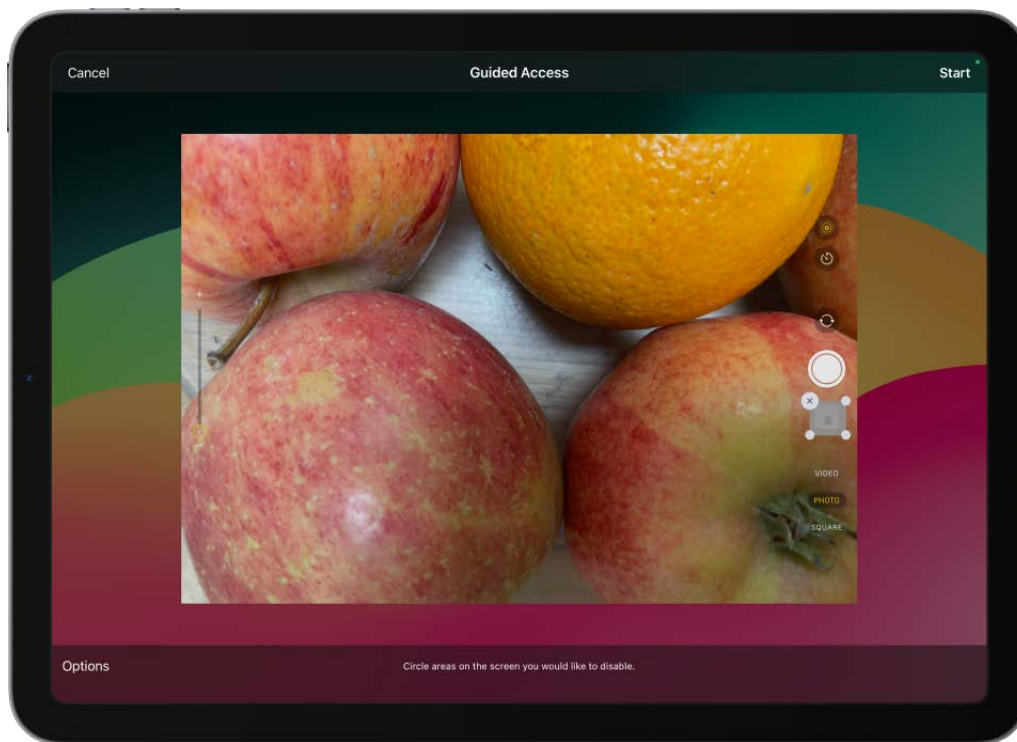
Learn more about [hearing-related accessibility features](#)



Speech

You can communicate with family, friends, and colleagues in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability.

Learn more about [speech-related accessibility features](#)



Cognitive

You can reduce distraction and sensory stimulus, get help with everyday tasks, like signing into accounts and typing, and make it easier to identify people and things around you.

Learn more about [cognitive-related accessibility features](#)

You can also set up Assistive Access, which gives those with cognitive disabilities the option to perform the most common tasks, such as taking photos and communicating with their inner circle of family and friends, while reducing cognitive load and offering more focused choices. See the [Assistive Access User Guide](#).

Siri is often the easiest way to start using accessibility features with iPad.

 **Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

You can also use [Control Center](#) or [Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on accessibility features quickly.

Turn on accessibility features to set up your iPad

iPad has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPad, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPad features.

Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPad has turned on, triple-click the top button (on an iPad with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPad models) to [turn on VoiceOver](#).
2. Do any of the following and more:
 - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
 - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
 - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
 - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
 - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPad](#).

Note: When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See [Use VoiceOver gestures](#) and [Operate iPad when VoiceOver is on](#).

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in [VoiceOver settings](#).

Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See [Zoom in on the iPad screen](#).

Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap  to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- [VoiceOver](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [Display & Text Size](#)
- [Motion](#)

- [Spoken Content](#)
- Touch (such as [AssistiveTouch](#) and [Touch Accommodations](#), [Switch Control](#), or any [external keyboard](#).)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPad with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions.

See [Turn on and set up iPad](#). (See [Move from an Android device to iPad](#) if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPad

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
 - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
 - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses. You can also [change how Siri responds](#).
 - *Use Siri even when iPad is covered or facing down:* Turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri."

To have Siri respond when iPad is facing up, go to Settings > Siri & Search, then turn on Listen for "Siri" or "Hey Siri."

To change how you activate Siri, see [Set up Siri](#) and [Change when Siri responds](#).

Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
 2. To make a request, activate Siri, then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.
-

Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri [announce notifications](#) from apps like Messages on your iPad speaker, supported headphones, and on MFi [hearing devices](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

End calls with Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.

Note: Available in select languages and on supported models. Requires download of speech models.)

2. To end a call, say something like: "Siri, hang up." (Participants on the call will hear you.)

You can also [route and automatically answer calls](#) or have Siri [announce and answer calls](#).

Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut on iPad

When you add features to Accessibility Shortcut, you can just triple-click a physical button and tap to quickly open the feature you want.

Add features to Accessibility Shortcut

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap to select the features you use the most.

Note: To add some features—like [Guided Access](#) or [Assistive Access](#)—to Accessibility Shortcut, you must first turn them on.

2. To rearrange the order they appear, drag  to move a feature up or down.
-

Open Accessibility Shortcut

1. Triple-click one of the following:
 - The Home button (on an iPad with a Home button)
 - The top button (on other iPad models)
 2. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off.
 3. To slow down the double-click or triple-click speed, see [Adjust settings for the top or Home button](#).
-

When Assistive Access is on, Accessibility Shortcut can't be opened. To open it while Guided Access is on, you must first turn on Accessibility Shortcut when you [set up Guided Access](#).

You can also add Accessibility Shortcut to [Control Center](#), then reach your shortcuts with an onscreen swipe instead of triple-clicking a physical button. (Magnifier, Text Size, Guided Access, and Hearing can be added directly to Control Center.)

 **Tip:** Many accessibility features can be turned on and off with Siri. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Vision

Set up vision-related accessibility features on iPad

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your vision needs. You can change screen colors and text size, zoom in, use VoiceOver to hear the content of your screen read aloud to you, and more.

Change colors	• Change colors • Dark Mode
Read text more easily	• Zoom • Legibility • Magnifier • Hover Text
Make onscreen items easier to see	• Change colors • Onscreen motion • Pointer
Hear what’s onscreen	• Audio descriptions • Spoken content • VoiceOver
Use braille	• Braille display
Speak to get things done	• Dictation • Siri • Shortcuts

Zoom in on the iPad screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you’re doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom), magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom), or magnify a portion of the screen that stays in one place (Pinned Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.

Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
 2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Follow Focus*: Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
 - *Smart Typing*: Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
 - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
 - *Zoom Controller*: Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
 - *Zoom Region*: Choose Pinned Zoom, Full Screen Zoom, or Window Zoom.
 - *Zoom Filter*: Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
 - *Maximum Zoom Level*: Drag the slider to adjust the level.
 3. If you use iPad with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:
 - *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
 - *Adjust Size with Zoom*: Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.
 4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.
-

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on Zoom.
2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:
 - *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
 - *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
 - *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.
3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:
 - *Choose Region:* Choose Pinned Zoom, Full Screen Zoom, or Window Zoom.
 - *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
 - *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
 - *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.
4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:
 - *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.
 - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.
 - *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with an Apple external keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See [iPad keyboards](#).

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#).

Hover over text to enlarge it on iPad

With Hover Text, you can move the pointer over something on the screen—for example, text, a menu item, or a button—to see a larger version in a separate window.

Before you begin

To use Hover Text, you need a pointing device such as a mouse or trackpad. On [supported iPad models](#), you can also use Apple Pencil (2nd generation) Apple Pencil Pro as the pointing device.

Set up Hover Text

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text.
 2. Customize any of the following:
 - *Display mode*: Choose where to show the Hover Text window—inline (near the cursor), at top of the screen, or at the bottom of the screen.
 - *Scrolling speed*: Choose a slower or faster scrolling speed for long text descriptions.
 - *Appearance*: Choose the font, size, text color, insertion point color, background color, and border color of the Hover Text window.
 - *Activation modifier and lock*: If you use iPad with a connected keyboard, choose which key you press to activate Hover Text. To keep Hover Text activated when you triple-press the key, turn on Activation Lock.
-

Turn Hover Text on or off

Do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text.
 - If you've [set up Accessibility Shortcut](#), triple-click the Home button or top button (depending on your iPad model).
-

Use Hover Text

1. Move the pointer over something you want to see more clearly.

To see a larger version of text as you're typing, move the pointer over the text entry field.

2. If you have a connected keyboard, press and hold the activation modifier key to activate Hover Text. (It's automatically activated if you don't have a connected keyboard.)
-

Change color on iPad to make it easier to see items onscreen

To make it easier to see what's on your iPad screen, you can invert and filter colors or make transparent items solid.

 **Tip:** Quickly set brightness with the slider in [Control Center](#).

Invert colors

You can invert colors on the iPad screen to make it easier to read text. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support [Dark Mode](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
 2. Turn on one of the following:
 - *Smart Invert*: Reverse colors everywhere except images.
 - *Classic Invert*: Reverse all the colors onscreen.
-

Filter colors to adjust hues

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

Note: Color filters can change the look of images and videos.

Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use [Night Shift](#). Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

Make transparent items solid

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
 2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.
-

Differentiate without color

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

Use ones and zeros for on/off switches

Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use “1” to indicate when they’re on and “0” to indicate when they’re off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

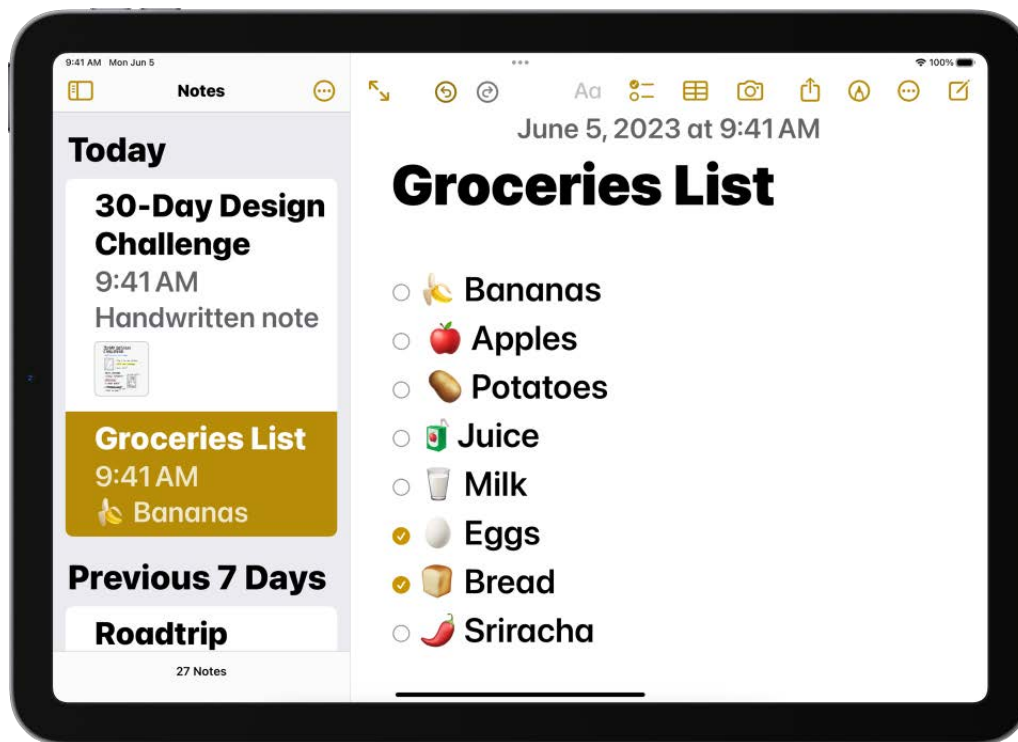
To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in on the iPad screen](#).

You can also use Magnifier  to change the colors you see in your environment. See [Change Magnifier settings on iPad](#).

Make iPad text easier to read with accessibility features

You can use accessibility features to change the weight, size, and darkness of text to make it easier to read on your iPad screen. You can also have iPad underline text you can tap.

 **Tip:** Quickly set text size when you add it to [Control Center](#).



Make text easier to read

You can adjust your preferred text weight, size, and darkness in apps that support Dynamic Type, such as Settings, Calendar, Contacts, Mail, Messages, and Notes.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Do any of following:
 - *Make text bigger:* Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size (turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes to show more size options).

You can also go to Settings > Display & Brightness > Display Zoom, then select Larger Text to see larger controls.
 - *Make text heavier:* Turn on Bold Text.
 - *Make text darker:* Turn on Increase Contrast to improve legibility by making the text stand out more.
 - *Identify tappable text:* Turn on Button Shapes to underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

You can also enlarge text on your screen by using [Zoom](#) or in your environment with the [Magnifier app](#) .

Adjust the text size while you're using an app

1. Open Control Center, then tap **AA**.

(If you don't see **AA**, add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Text Size.)

2. Drag the slider up or down to increase or decrease the text size.

To change the text size for all apps, tap All Apps at the bottom of the screen.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in on the iPad screen](#).

If you're using a mouse or other device with an onscreen pointer and have trouble finding the pointer on the screen, you can make it bigger. See [Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPad](#).

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPad

If you don't want visual motion on your iPad screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
 - Screen transitions
 - Siri animations
 - Typing autocompletion
 - Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
 - Animated images on the Web and in apps
-

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Motion.

2. These settings stop or reduce motion:

- *Reduce Motion*: Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)
- *Auto-Play Message Effects*: Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)

- *Auto-Play Video Previews*: Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
 - *Auto-Play Animated Images*: Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)
 - *Dim Flashing Lights*: Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
 - *Limit Frame Rate*: Turn on. (On models with ProMotion display technology, this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.)
-

To apply these effects to specific apps, see [Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPad](#).

Important: Your iPad uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported video content and automatically dims them on your iPad in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPad

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps or for the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.
 2. Tap Add App, then choose an app from the list (or Home Screen & App Library).
 3. Tap the name of the app (or Home Screen & App Library) to access its settings.
-

Hear iPad speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPad read text on the screen out loud. Have iPad read the entire screen or a specific selection. Or hear what you type spoken out loud, character by character or word by word.

Have iPad speak onscreen text

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Turn on any of the following:

- *Speak Selection*: Have iPad speak the text you select.
- *Speak Screen*: Have iPad read all text on the screen, starting from the top.

Turn on Speech Controller to keep the Speak Screen controls on the screen.

Turn on Highlight Content to have words or sentences highlighted as iPad reads them out loud.

- *Typing Feedback options*: As you type, have iPad speak character by character, word by word, and more.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Hear selected text (if you turned on Speak Selection)*: Select the text you want spoken, then tap Speak.
- *Hear all text on the screen (if you turned on Speak Screen)*: Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.

Use the controls that appear to pause speaking, adjust the rate, navigate forward or back to the content you want to hear, or use Speak on Touch (tap the text you want iPad to read).

- *Hear what you type (if you turned on Typing Feedback options)*: Start typing.

 **Siri**: Say something like: "Speak screen." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Voices*: Choose a voice and dialect.
 - *Speaking Rate*: Drag the slider.
 - *Pronunciations*: Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.
-

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPad

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
 2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.
-

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article [Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad](#).

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see [Add descriptive audio tracks](#) in the Compressor User Guide.

Use VoiceOver

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPad

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPad even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—from battery level, to who's calling, to which app your finger is on. You can also adjust the speaking rate and pitch to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, [use VoiceOver gestures](#).

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPad.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPad. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPad.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn the setting on or off.
- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.

 **Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

Learn and practice VoiceOver gestures

You can practice VoiceOver gestures in a special area without affecting iPad or its settings. When you practice a gesture, VoiceOver describes the gesture and the resulting action.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
 2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
 3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
 - Tap
 - Double tap
 - Triple tap
 - Swipe left, right, up, or down
 4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.
-

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPad

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the VoiceOver volume and other audio options

- To increase or decrease the volume, press the volume buttons on iPad.
 - To set other audio options, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
 - *Sounds*: Adjust and preview sound effects.
 - *Audio Ducking*: Temporarily reduce media playback volume when VoiceOver speaks.
 - *Send to HDMI*: Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.
-

Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language:* VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPad. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings  > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.
 - *Switch languages using the rotor:* See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPad](#).
 - *Automatically detect languages:* VoiceOver can switch voices for text in different languages. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.
-

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate:* Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Choose a voice:* Tap Speech > Voice, then choose a voice. To download an enhanced voice, tap .
- *Adjust the pitch:* Tap Speech, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words:* Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap , enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap any of the following:

- *Verbosity:* Choose options to have VoiceOver speak hints, punctuation, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on (available on iPad models with True Tone Flash).

To change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation, tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which "[" is spoken as "left brack."

- *Always Speak Notifications:* VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages as they occur, even if iPad is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPad.
-

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Then, when you open certain apps or adjust the rotor, the settings for speech, audio, verbosity, typing, navigation, and braille are applied automatically.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
 2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
 3. Adjust the settings, then below Automatic Switching, do any of the following:
 - *Apply the settings for certain apps:* Tap Apps, then select the ones you want this setting to apply to.
 - *Apply the settings for certain contexts:* Tap Context, then select one or more contexts, such as Word Processing, Messaging, or Console.
-

Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.
 - *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.
-

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
 - *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.
-

Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPad

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.
 2. Choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.
-

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPad

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture —touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left
Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see [Use flat or grouped navigation](#).

Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold

 **Tip:** As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.
Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume. For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap. To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also use handwriting to select an item by writing its name. To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPad](#).

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

Operate iPad when VoiceOver is on

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPad, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPad

- *On an iPad with a Home button:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
- *On an iPad with Touch ID:* Rest your finger on the top button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
- *On an iPad with Face ID:* Wake iPad and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you hear two rising tones (if Face ID is enabled).

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, [enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode](#) or [type onscreen braille](#).

Go to the Home Screen

- Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
- On an iPad with a Home button, press the Home button.

Use the dock

Slide one finger up from the bottom edge until you hear two rising tones, then swipe down.

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:
 - Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you hear three tones, then lift your finger.
 - Double-click the Home button (on an iPad with a Home button).
 2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
 3. Double-tap to open the app.
-

Open Control Center

- Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you hear two rising tones.
- Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

View notifications

- Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you hear three rising tones.
- Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
 2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.
-

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the

new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

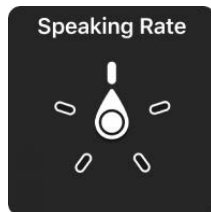
When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
 2. Swipe down with three fingers.
-

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPad

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



When you [use an Apple external keyboard to control VoiceOver](#), use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.
 - *Add another language:* Tap Speech > Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
 - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.
-

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPad

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.
2. To enter text, do one of the following:
 - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.
 - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.
 - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.
 - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
 - *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.
-

Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.

- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.

- *Delete a character:* Use .
 - *Select text:* Do any of the following:
 - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
 - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z") to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
 - *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
 - *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
 - *Undo:* Shake iPad, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.
-

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
 2. Tap any of the following:
 - *Typing Style*: You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
 - *Phonetic Feedback*: Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, "f" and then "foxtrot."
 - *Typing Feedback*: Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
 - *Rotor*: Select the settings you want to include in the rotor.
 - *Speech*: Tap Add New Language (below Rotor Languages), then choose a language.
 - *Verbosity*: Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.
-

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPad

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPad passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example):* Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
 - *Enter a space:* Swipe right with two fingers.
 - *Go to a new line:* Swipe right with three fingers.
 - *Delete the previous character:* Swipe left with two fingers.
4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

- 1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
- 2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

Use VoiceOver on iPad with an Apple external keyboard

If you [use an Apple external keyboard](#) with iPad, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

- 1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
- 2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M

Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Switch apps	Command-Tab or Command-Shift-Tab
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-/
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Shift-F11
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPad

iPad supports many international braille tables and refreshable braille displays. You can connect a Bluetooth® wireless braille display to read VoiceOver output, including contracted and uncontracted braille, and equations using Nemeth Code. When you edit text, the braille display shows the text in context, and your edits are automatically converted between braille and printed text. You can also use a braille display with input keys to control your iPad when VoiceOver is turned on.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article [Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPad

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPad, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPad, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPad, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.
2. Set any of the following:

Output	Set the braille display output to uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille.
Input	Choose the input method for entering braille on the display—uncontracted six-dot, uncontracted eight-dot, or contracted braille. You can also turn on Automatic Translation.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille directly on the iPad screen with VoiceOver .
Braille Tables	Add tables to the Braille Table rotor.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPad, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

Type braille directly on the iPad screen with VoiceOver

If you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to enter six-dot, eight-dot, or contracted braille directly on the iPad screen, without a physical braille keyboard.

Enter braille on the screen

1. Set the rotor to Braille Screen Input.

If you don't see Braille Screen Input in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then select it from the list.

2. Place iPad in one of the following positions:

- *Tabletop mode*: Lay iPad flat in front of you.
- *Screen away mode*: Hold iPad with the screen facing away so your fingers curl back to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

 **Tip:** To have iPad read dots aloud, touch and hold the dots, then when you hear the timer tones and announcement, release the dots.

To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, double-tap all the dots.

You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to <i>your</i> right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through the braille modes	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (when contractions are turned on)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next keyboard	Swipe up with two fingers

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or adjust the rotor to another setting.
-

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - Set six-dot, eight-dot, or contracted braille as the default.
 - Reverse the dot positions for six-dot and eight-dot braille.
 3. To view or edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.
-

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPad

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.
 2. Tap any of the following:
 - *All Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
 - *Touch Gestures*: List the gestures and the associated commands.
 - *Handwriting*: List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
 - *Braille Screen Input*: List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.
-

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

Use VoiceOver on iPad with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPad, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
 - *Pointer*: Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.

- *Speak Under Pointer*: You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.
-

Use VoiceOver for images and videos on iPad

You can use the Camera  and Photos  apps with VoiceOver, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver can provide image descriptions.

Take photos and videos in Camera

When you use Camera, VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.

To take a photo or start, pause, or resume a video recording, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Explore images

When you use the Image Explorer, VoiceOver tells you about people, objects, text, and tables within images. You can navigate receipts and nutrition labels in logical order, or move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. In an app such as Photos or Safari, select an image.
3. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear "Explore image features."
4. Move your finger around on the image to find out the position of each object.

You can [add custom descriptions](#) to your images with Markup.

Note: Not available in all languages. See [Image Descriptions for VoiceOver](#).

Trim videos in Photos

1. Select the video you want to trim, then double-tap.
 2. Select Edit, then double-tap.
 3. Select Start or End (on the media scrubber), then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
 4. When you're finished, select Done, then double-tap.
-

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPad

You can use VoiceOver to interact with apps, even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver is supported in the built-in Apple apps that came with your iPad—such as Safari , Maps , and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements even on webpages and in apps without accessibility information.

Browse the web in Safari

- *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
- *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
- *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag  up or down to reposition an item.
- *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
- *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

 **Tip:** If you [use an Apple external keyboard](#) with iPad, you can [use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing](#).

Navigate in Maps

- *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.
 - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
 - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPad speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
 - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
- *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
- *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Pan the map:* Select the map, then swipe with three fingers.
- *Browse locations and pins on the map:* Select the map, set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
- *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.
- *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.
- *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPad guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound.

Read PDFs

In the Books  and Files  apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDFs. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

Trim voice memo recordings

In the Voice Memos  app, you can use VoiceOver to edit recordings.

1. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
2. Select Edit at the top right, then double-tap.
3. Select , then double-tap.

4. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, double-tap and hold, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
5. Select Trim, then double-tap.
6. Select Save, then double-tap.
7. Select Done, then double-tap.

Hear data in Weather maps

Some maps in the Weather  app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With [VoiceOver turned on](#), open the Weather app.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words "Weather Map Snapshot." If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says "math" before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. You can continue to double-tap the selected element to "drill down" into the equation to focus on the selected element, then swipe left or right, or up or down, to read one part at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See [Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPad](#).

Use VoiceOver Recognition on the web or in apps without accessibility information

Important: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
 2. Turn on any of the following:
 - *Image Descriptions*: Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web.
 - *Screen Recognition*: Get descriptions of screen elements in apps.
 - *Text Recognition*: Get descriptions of text found in images.
 3. Tap Feedback Style, then choose Speak, Play Sound, or Do Nothing.
-

Mobility

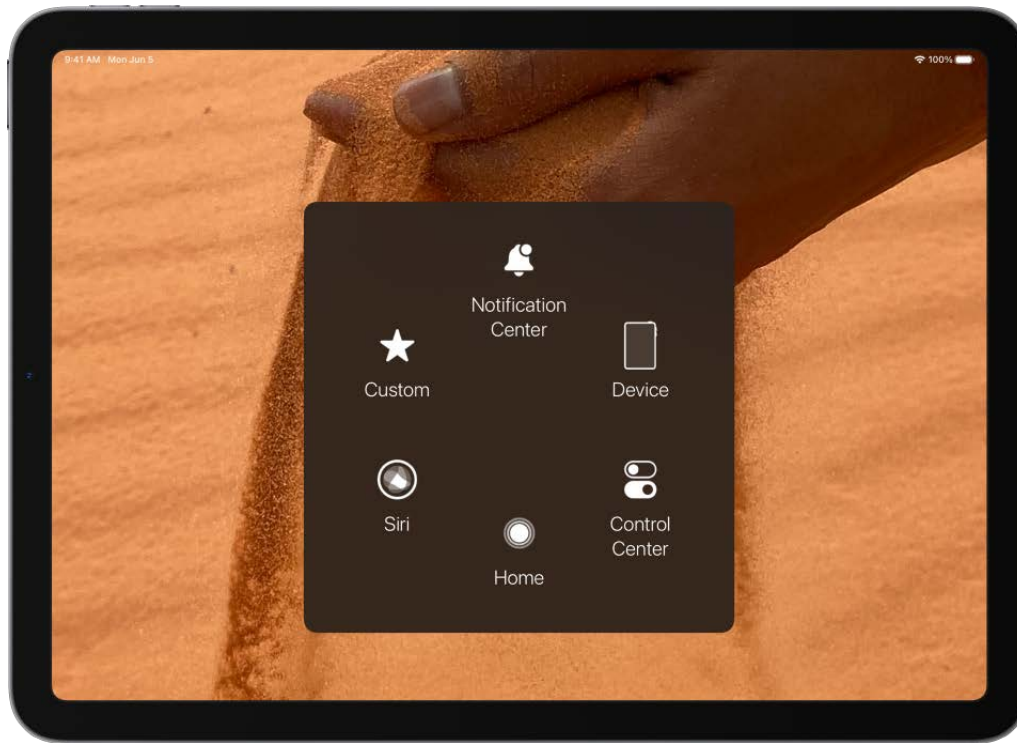
Set up mobility-related accessibility features on iPad

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your mobility needs. You can use your voice to navigate your iPad, adapt the touchscreen for specific gestures, adjust how the screen responds to your touch, and more.

Navigate your iPad hands-free	• Voice Control • Siri • Shortcuts • Call audio routing
Let iPad type for you	• Dictation • Predictive text • Scribble
Connect other inputs	• Switch Control • Keyboards • Bluetooth accessories • Head tracking • Eye-tracking device • iPad keyboards
Control other devices	• Apple TV Remote • Control nearby devices • Platform Switching
Customize gestures	• AssistiveTouch • AirPods • Pointer scrolling speed • Home or top button • Face ID and attention
Adjust the sensitivity of your input	• Slow Keys and Sticky Keys • Siri Pause Time • Touch accommodations

Use AssistiveTouch on iPad

AssistiveTouch helps you use iPad if you have difficulty touching the screen or pressing the buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory to perform actions or gestures that are difficult for you. You can also use a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick) together with AssistiveTouch to control iPad.



With AssistiveTouch, you can use a simple tap (or the equivalent on your accessory) to perform actions such as the following:

- Open the AssistiveTouch menu
- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures
- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPad
- Shake iPad
- Take a screenshot

- Use Apple Pay
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Control Analytics
- Restart iPad

Set up AssistiveTouch

 **Siri:** Say something like: "Turn on AssistiveTouch" or "Turn off AssistiveTouch." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:
 - *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap  or  to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
 - *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, or Long Press:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button.
 - *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.
 - *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
 - *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an iPad with Face ID, use AssistiveTouch to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the top button. Or on iPad (10th generation), iPad mini (6th generation), and iPad Air (4th generation and later), use AssistiveTouch to confirm payments with your passcode instead of double-clicking the top button.

 **Tip:** To turn AssistiveTouch on or off quickly, you can [set up Accessibility Shortcut](#), then triple-click a button.

Add a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, joysticks, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.

2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.

3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:

- *Devices*: Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
- *Mouse Keys*: Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard number pad.
- *Pointer Style*: Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
- *Show Onscreen Keyboard*: Display the onscreen keyboard.
- *Always Show Menu*: Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
- *Tracking speed*: Drag the slider to adjust the speed.
- *Drag Lock*: Turn on to enable dragging.
- *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges.

When you use a mouse or trackpad, you can also [change the pointer appearance](#).

Set up Dwell Control

iPad performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Fallback Action*: Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
 - *Movement Tolerance*: Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
 - *Hot Corners*: Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.
 - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action*: Tap  or .

Use AssistiveTouch

Tap the menu button, then choose an action or gesture.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate*: Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag*: Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

Create custom gestures

You can add your favorite gestures (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:
 - *Touch-and-hold gesture*: Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.
 - *Two-finger rotation gesture*: Rotate two fingers on the iPad screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button, tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

Control iPad with an eye-tracking device

You can control iPad using just your eyes with an MFi eye-tracking device, so that a pointer moves to follow where you're looking onscreen. You can even perform actions—such as a tap—using an extended gaze. Some eye trackers also support input from physical switches.

1. Follow the device manufacturer's instructions to connect your eye-tracking device to iPad (with the Lightning or USB-C connector, depending on your iPad model).
 2. Complete setup using the device's companion app.
 3. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then [turn on AssistiveTouch](#).
 4. To customize how you use eye-tracking, tap Devices (below Pointer Devices), tap the name of the device, then do any of the following:
 - *Perform actions using a switch:* Tap Customize Additional Buttons (if supported by your device).
 - *Reach and activate onscreen items more easily:* Turn on Snap to Item.
 - *Fade the pointer away:* Turn on Auto-Hide. When Auto-Hide's on, you can set how long to gaze before the pointer reappears, and how visible it is when you're not using it.
 5. Do any of the following:
 - *Change the color or thickness of the pointer:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then [customize the pointer appearance](#).
 - *Perform actions using extended gaze:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then [turn on Dwell Control](#).
-

Adjust how iPad responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPad touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPad recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPad from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off Shake to Undo if you unintentionally shake iPad.

Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations, then turn on Touch Accommodations.
2. You can configure iPad to do any of the following:
 - *Respond to touches of a certain duration:* Turn on Hold Duration, then tap  or  to adjust the duration. (The default is 0.10 seconds.)
 - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* To increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins, tap Swipe Gestures, turn on Swipe Gestures, then adjust required movement.
 - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on Ignore Repeat, then tap  or  to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
 - *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose Use Initial Touch Location or Use Final Touch Location.

If you choose Use Initial Touch Location, iPad uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example. If you choose Use Final Touch Location, iPad registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPad responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap  or  to adjust the timing. Your iPad can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

The touch-and-hold gesture reveals content previews, actions, and contextual menus. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Haptic Touch.
2. Choose the touch duration—Fast or Slow.
3. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

Turn off Tap to Wake

On a supported iPad model, you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPad. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch, then turn off Tap to Wake.

Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPad, you can turn off Shake to Undo. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch.



Tip: To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

Route and automatically answer calls on iPad

You can automatically direct the audio of FaceTime calls to the iPad speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPad can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing, then choose an audio destination.
 2. Tap Auto-Answer Calls, turn on Auto-Answer Calls, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping  or .
-

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPad speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPad

On an iPad with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Position your face within the frame, then tap Accessibility Options.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPad.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPad only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPad can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPad to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.

2. Turn on or off any of the following:

- Require Attention for Face ID
- Attention Aware Features

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPad.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

Use Voice Control to interact with iPad

You can control iPad with just your voice. Speak commands to perform gestures, interact with screen elements, dictate and edit text, and more.

Note: Voice Control is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPad is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPad completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

When the download is complete,  appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:

- *Language:* Set the language and download languages for offline use.
- *Customize Commands:* View the available commands and create new commands.
- *Vocabulary:* Teach Voice Control new words.
- *Show Confirmation:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
- *Play Sound:* When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
- *Show Hints:* See command suggestions and hints.

- *Overlay*: Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
 - *Attention Aware*: On an iPad with Face ID, Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPad and goes to sleep when you look away.
-

Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.

 **Siri**: Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off Voice Control." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Learn Voice Control commands

When Voice Control is turned on, you can say commands such as the following:

- "Open Control Center"
- "Go home"
- "Tap *item name*"
- "Open *app name*"
- "Take screenshot"
- "Turn up volume"

To learn more Voice Control commands, say "Show me what to say" or "Show commands." You can also use an onscreen tutorial called Voice Control Guide.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.
 2. Tap Open Voice Control Guide, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands or dictation. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands and dictation again.

- *Pause Voice Control*: Say "Stop listening."
 - *Resume Voice Control*: Say "Start listening."
-

Label onscreen items with a screen overlay

For faster interactions, you can navigate iPad with a screen overlay that shows item names, numbers, or a grid.

- *Item names:* Say "Show names" or "Show names continuously," then say "Tap [*item name*]."
- *Numbers:* Say "Show numbers" or "Show numbers continuously," then say the number next to the item you want. You can also give a command to perform a gesture, such as "Tap [*number*]," "Long press [*number*]," "Swipe up at [*number*]," or "Double-tap [*number*]."
- *Grid:* To interact with a screen location not represented by an item name or number, say "Show grid" or "Show grid continuously," then do any of the following:
 - *Drill down:* Say a number by itself to show a more detailed grid.
 - *Say a command to interact with an area of the grid:* Say something like: "Tap [*number*]" or "Zoom in [*number*]."

 **Tip:** To adjust the number of grid rows and columns, go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control > Overlay, then select Numbered Grid. When Voice Control is turned on, you can also say something like: "Show grid with five rows," or "Show grid continuously with three columns."

To turn off the overlay, say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid."

Switch between dictation, spelling, and command modes

When you're working in a text input area—for example, writing a document, email, or message—you can easily switch between three modes as needed:

- *Dictation mode:* The default—any words you say that aren't Voice Control commands are entered as text.

If several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you meant. (Available in select languages.)

- *Spelling mode:* When you're in dictation mode and need to spell out a word, say "Spelling mode."

Note: Spelling mode is available for English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

- *Command mode:* Voice Control responds only to commands. Other words are ignored and aren't entered as text.

It's especially helpful when you need to use a series of commands and want to prevent what you say from inadvertently being entered in a text input area.

To switch to Command mode, say "Command mode."

To switch back to Dictation mode, say "Dictation mode."

Adjust settings for the top or Home button

You can adjust accessibility settings for the Home button (on an iPad that has one) or top button (on other iPad models).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility, then tap Home Button (on an iPad with a Home button) or Top Button (on other iPad models).
 2. Set any of the following:
 - *Click Speed*: Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
 - *Press and Hold to Speak*: Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
 - *Rest Finger to Open*: On an iPad with Touch ID, you can unlock and open iPad by resting your finger on Touch ID.
-

On an iPad with Face ID, you can also [use AssistiveTouch](#) or [use Switch Control](#) to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the top button.

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPad

On the Apple TV Remote on iPad, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPad

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you [use a mouse or trackpad](#) with iPad, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer size
- Pointer Animations
- Trackpad Inertia (available when connected to a supported multi-touch trackpad)
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings on iPad

You can adjust the onscreen (software) keyboard on iPad. If you use an external (hardware) keyboard with iPad, you can customize keyboard shortcuts and change settings such as the key repeat rate.

For information about other ways to adjust the onscreen keyboard, see [Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPad](#) and [Add or change keyboards on iPad](#).

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If you have difficulty seeing the onscreen keyboard, you can set it to display only uppercase letters.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

Type on a larger onscreen keyboard

Rotate iPad to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Safari, Messages, Notes, and Contacts.

Control iPad with an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using the touchscreen, you can use an external [keyboard](#) to control your iPad using shortcuts.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.
2. Control your iPad using keyboard shortcuts.

Browse keyboard shortcuts in help	Tab-H
Move forward	Tab
Move backward	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Function-H
Open the App Switcher	Function-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Function-C
Open Notification Center	Function-N

3. To customize the keyboard shortcuts, tap Commands.
4. To customize the appearance of the focus, tap any of the following:
 - Auto-Hide
 - Increase Size
 - High Contrast
 - Color

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you have difficulty using an external keyboard, you can adjust the settings.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat*: Adjust the repeat interval and delay.
 - *Sticky Keys*: Use Sticky Keys to press and hold modifier keys, such as Command and Option, as you press another key.
 - *Slow Keys*: Use Slow Keys to adjust the time between a key being pressed and activated.
-

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPad

If you have AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your mobility or hearing needs.

-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > AirPods.
 2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.
 3. Set any of the following options:
 - *Press Speed*: Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
 - *Press and Hold Duration*: Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
 - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPod*: (AirPods Pro) Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.
 - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking*: When you turn on Follow iPad, the audio adjusts based on your head movement (for supported audio and video content).
 4. To customize your audio, tap Audio Accessibility Settings.
-

Change Apple Pencil double tap and squeeze settings for accessibility

If you have difficulty using double tap or squeeze on Apple Pencil, you can adjust Apple Pencil settings for accessibility.

Note: Double tap is available on [supported iPad models](#) with Apple Pencil (2nd generation) and Apple Pencil Pro. Squeeze is available on supported iPad models with Apple Pencil Pro.

-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple Pencil.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - Drag the slider to adjust how firmly you need to press for the squeeze action. Turn on Extended Range for additional firmness options.
 - Turn double tap on or off.
 - Choose a slower duration for double tap.
-

 **Tip:** More options for customizing Apple Pencil are available in Apple Pencil settings. Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil.

Control a nearby Apple device with iPad

You can remotely control your other Apple devices with your iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Control Nearby Devices, then tap Control Nearby Devices.

The device you want to control must be signed in with the same Apple ID and connected to the same Wi-Fi network as your iPad.

2. Choose the device you want to control, then tap a button.

Button names correspond to the controls on your device. Tap  to see your options, including media play controls.

 **Tip:** To quickly turn on Control Nearby Devices, add this feature to [Accessibility Shortcut](#).

To stop controlling the other device, tap .

Switch Control

Intro to Switch Control on iPad

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPad by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPad screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPad.

Switches on iPad don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- *Screen*: Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPad screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Camera*: Move your head to the left or right while in view of the front-facing iPad camera. You can set up left and right movements as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Back Tap*: Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPad. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.
- *Sound*: Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.
- *Gaming*: Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPad.

External switches connect to iPad through Bluetooth® or the Lightning connector or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory
 - Joystick
 - Game controller
 - MFi switch or switch interface
-

How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch's action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPad

To set up [Switch Control](#), you need to connect and add one or more [switches](#), then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.

Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or MFi device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPad by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPad.

1. Turn on the switch.
 2. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Step 2: Add switches and assign actions

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.
2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, or Sound.

If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPad as described above in [Step 1: Connect an external switch \(optional\)](#).

3. Assign an action to the switch.

The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in [Step 3: Choose a scanning style](#), below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

 **Tip:** Turn your iPad into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPad with.

Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Auto Scanning:* The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.

If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPad speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.

- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Hold Duration:* Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.
- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor:* Make the highlight more prominent.
- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different highlight color.

Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

Important: When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

 **Tip:** You can add Switch Control to [Accessibility Shortcut](#), then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the Home button (on an iPad with a Home button) or the top button (on other iPad models).

Use Switch Control on iPad to select items, perform actions, and more

After you [set up and turn on Switch Control](#), you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode*: The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.
- *Gliding cursor*: You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.
- *Head tracking*: On supported models, you can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the [scanning style](#) you're using, do one of the following:
 - *If using Auto Scanning*: Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.
 - *If using Manual Scanning*: Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
 - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning*: Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:
 - *If using Auto Scanning*: Activate your Select Item switch.
 - *If using Manual Scanning*: Activate your Select Item switch.
 - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning*: Wait until the current group is automatically selected.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

Use the gliding cursor to select a point

By default, Switch Control starts in item mode. To use the gliding cursor instead, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).
2. To position the vertical crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
3. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.
4. To position the horizontal crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide horizontal band is over the item you want.
5. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine horizontal line is over the item.
6. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Set up head tracking

On an iPad with Face ID, you can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up head tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've [set up switches](#).
 - Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:
 - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.
 - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
 - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap  or .
-

Use head tracking

To use head tracking, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Use a switch on other devices with Platform Switching on iPad

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPad.

1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
 2. Sign in with the same Apple ID on all your devices.
 3. [Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPad](#), then turn on Switch Control for the others: [iPhone](#), [Mac](#), or [Apple TV](#).
 4. [Use the switch](#) to open the Scanner menu.
 5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.
-

To remove control from your iPad, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.

Hearing

Set up hearing-related accessibility features on iPad

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your hearing needs. You can turn on captions, choose visual or vibrating alerts, interact with Siri using the keyboard, and more.

Turn sound into text

- [Sound recognition](#)
- [Live Captions \(beta\)](#)
- [RTT](#)
- [Subtitles and captions](#)
- [HomePod intercom transcriptions](#)
- [Audio messages transcriptions](#)

Hear better in different situations

- [MFi hearing devices](#)
- [AirPods](#)
- [Live Listen](#)
- [Audio settings](#)
- [Audio settings](#), including Conversation Boost
- [Background sounds](#)

Notice your alerts

- [LED flash for alerts](#)
 - [Siri notifications announcements](#)
-

Use hearing devices with iPad

You can use MFi hearing aids or sound processors with iPad and adjust their settings. See the Apple Support article [Made for iPhone compatible hearing devices](#) for a list of models that work well with iPad.

Pair hearing devices with iPad

If your hearing devices aren't listed in Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPad.

If your hearing devices are already paired to another nearby device, such as a Mac or iPad, make sure Bluetooth® is turned off on those devices. (When you finish pairing your hearing devices to your iPad, you can turn Bluetooth on again on those devices.)

1. On iPad, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
3. Turn your hearing devices off and back on again.

If you're unsure how to turn them off, refer to the instructions that came with them, or check with the audiologist who helped you set them up.

4. When their name appears below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the name and respond to the pairing requests.

Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPad whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *By triple-clicking a button:* With [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.
- *In Control Center:* Tap . (If you don't see , add it to [Control Center](#).)
- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
 - Check battery status.
 - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
 - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
 - Control Live Listen.
 - Choose whether phone and media audio are routed to the hearing device.

Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

1. Sign in with your Apple ID on all the devices.
2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility

Hearing Aid Compatibility may reduce interference and improve audio quality with some hearing aid models.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.
2. Turn on Hearing Aid Compatibility.

Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from Siri , Apple Music , Apple Podcasts , Apple TV , and more.

1. Tap  in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to.
2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically [route audio calls](#) to a hearing device.

To troubleshoot issues you have using your hearing devices with iPad, see the Apple Support article, [Use Made for iPhone hearing devices](#).

Use iPad as a remote microphone with Live Listen

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPad to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

-
1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPad, tap  in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.

2. To turn Live Listen on or off, do one of the following:

- Open Control Center, tap , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

(If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Hearing.)

- If you've [set up Accessibility Shortcut](#), triple-click a button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.
- If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.

3. Position iPad near the sound source.

Recognize sounds using iPad

Your iPad can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a doorbell, siren, or crying baby—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Note: Don't rely on your iPad to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.
2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPad to recognize.

 **Tip:** To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, use [Control Center](#).

Add a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell

You can also set up iPad to recognize a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell if they aren't recognized automatically.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition > Sounds.
 2. Tap Custom Alarm or Custom Appliance or Doorbell, then enter a name.
 3. When your alarm, appliance, or doorbell is ready, place iPad near the sound and minimize background noise.
 4. Tap Start Listening, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Set up and use RTT on iPad

With real-time text (RTT) and Wi-Fi calling on your iPhone, you can also make and receive RTT calls in the FaceTime app  on your iPad.

Important: RTT isn't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT call.

Set up RTT

1. Make sure you can [make and receive Wi-Fi calls on iPad](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > RTT.
3. Turn on Software RTT, then do any of the following.
 - Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT/TTY.
 - Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn it off to complete messages before sending.

When RTT is turned on,  appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

Start an RTT call

1. Open the FaceTime app  on iPad.
2. Tap New FaceTime, then type the name or number you want to call or tap  to add a contact.
3. Tap , tap Call, then tap RTT Call or RTT Relay Call.

Type text during an RTT call

1. After accepting or a [starting an RTT call](#) in the FaceTime app  on iPad, tap Use RTT, then tap .
2. Enter your message in the text field.

If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap  to send the message.

3. To also transmit audio, tap  in the top-right corner.
-

Note: Standard voice call rates apply for RTT calls.

Flash the LED for alerts on iPad

On an iPad with a flash, if you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls and other alerts, iPad can flash its LED (next to the camera lens on the back of iPad). The LED flashes only if iPad is locked.

 **Tip:** LED Flash for Alerts is a useful feature for anyone who might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
 2. To prevent LED flashes when iPad is in Silent mode, turn off Flash on Silent.
-

Adjust audio settings on iPad

You can adjust mono audio and left-right stereo balance to suit your hearing needs. With supported Apple and Beats headphones, you can amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to best suit your hearing. These adjustments help music, movies, phone calls, and podcasts sound crisper and clearer.

Balance the audio

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
 2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Mono Audio:* Turn on to combine the left and right channels to play the same content.
 - *Balance:* Drag the Left Right Stereo Balance slider.
-

Adjust frequencies, tone, and amplification

1. Make sure you're in a quiet environment and that you've paired your [AirPods](#) or Beats headphones (with [Bluetooth®](#)), or connected your [EarPods](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
3. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions. Or manually set any of the following:
 - *Frequencies*: Below Tune Audio For, choose an option to boost different frequencies.
 - *Soft sounds*: Drag the slider to set the amplification level.
4. To preview your audio settings, tap Play Sample.
5. Scroll down, then do any of the following:
 - Turn on Phone to apply the settings to phone calls.
 - Turn on Media to apply them to media playback like music, movies, and podcasts.

 **Tip:** Quickly access Headphone Accommodations by tapping  in [Control Center](#). (If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Hearing.)

For information about applying Headphone Accommodations settings to Transparency Mode and Conversation Boost when using AirPods Pro and iPad, see [Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Add an audiogram

You can use an audiogram to customize the audio settings on supported Apple and Beats headphones and improve their accuracy and sound quality.

Using pure-tone audio tests, audiograms display how loud sounds need to be in order for you to hear them.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Headphone Accommodations.
2. Turn on Headphone Accommodations, then tap Custom Audio Setup.
3. Select an audiogram, or tap Add Audiogram.

If the audiogram results from both ears are nearly symmetric, both left and right outputs are fit with the average of their profiles. If they're asymmetric, the outputs are fit for the better ear.

Play background sounds on iPad to mask environmental noise

You can play calming sounds—such as ocean or rain—to mask unwanted environmental noise and help minimize distractions so you can focus or rest.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.
 2. Set any of the following:
 - *Sound*: Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPad.
 - *Volume*: Drag the slider.
 - *Use When Media is Playing*: Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPad is playing music or other media.
 - *Stop Sounds When Locked*: Background sounds stop playing when iPad is locked.
-

Display subtitles and captions on iPad

iPad can provide subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions so you can follow along more easily with audio and video.

Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPad usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

1. While playing video content, tap .
 2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.
-

Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
 2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.
 3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:
 - Font, size, and color
 - Background color and opacity
 - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight
-

Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPad

If members of your home [use HomePod for Intercom messages](#), iPad can transcribe Intercom messages for you.

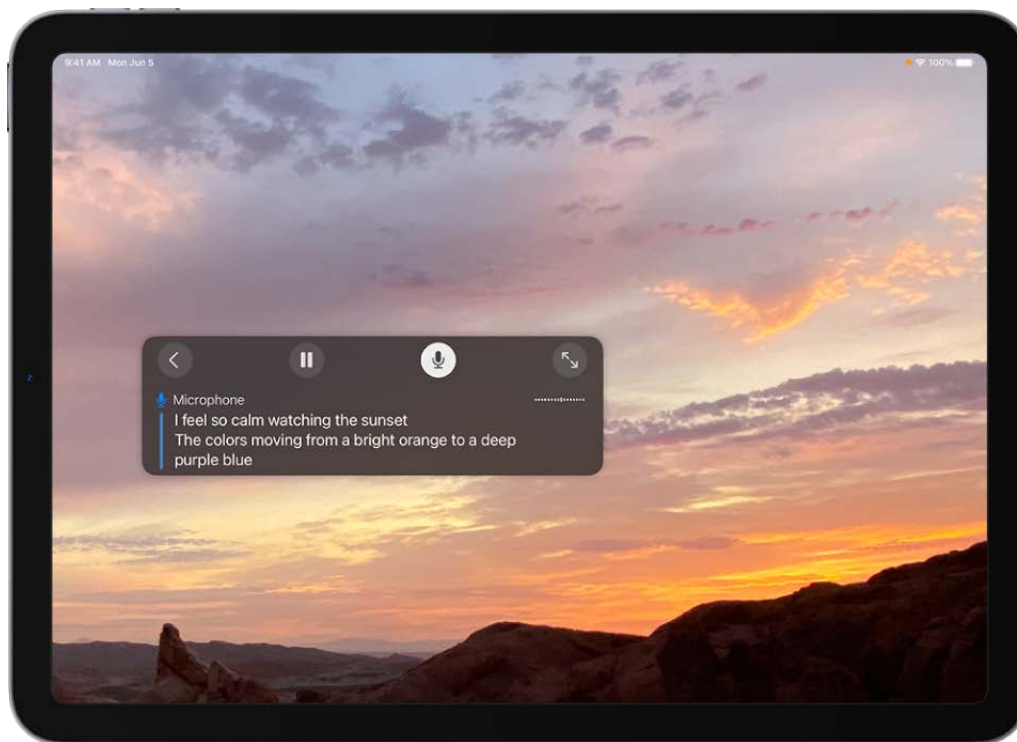
1. In the Home app, tap , then tap Home Settings.
 2. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.
 3. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.
-

See [Use HomePod as an Intercom](#) in the HomePod User Guide.

Get live captions in real time on iPad

With Live Captions (beta), spoken dialogue is turned into text and displayed in real time on your iPad screen. You can more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, and in live conversations around you. Live Captions is available on supported models when the [primary language is set](#) to English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

Important: The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.



Set up and customize Live Captions

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Captions, then turn on Live Captions (Beta).
2. Tap Appearance to customize the text, size, and color of the captions.
3. By default, Live Captions are shown across all apps. To get live captions only for certain apps such as FaceTime or RTT, turn them on below In-App Live Captions.

See live captions

With Live Captions turned on, iPad automatically transcribes the dialogue in apps or around you. You can do any of the following:

- *Transcribe a conversation near you:* Tap .
 - *Make the transcription window bigger:* Tap . To restore the window to the smaller size, tap .
 - *Pause the transcription:* Tap .
 - *Hide the transcription window:* Tap . To restore the window, tap .
-

Speech

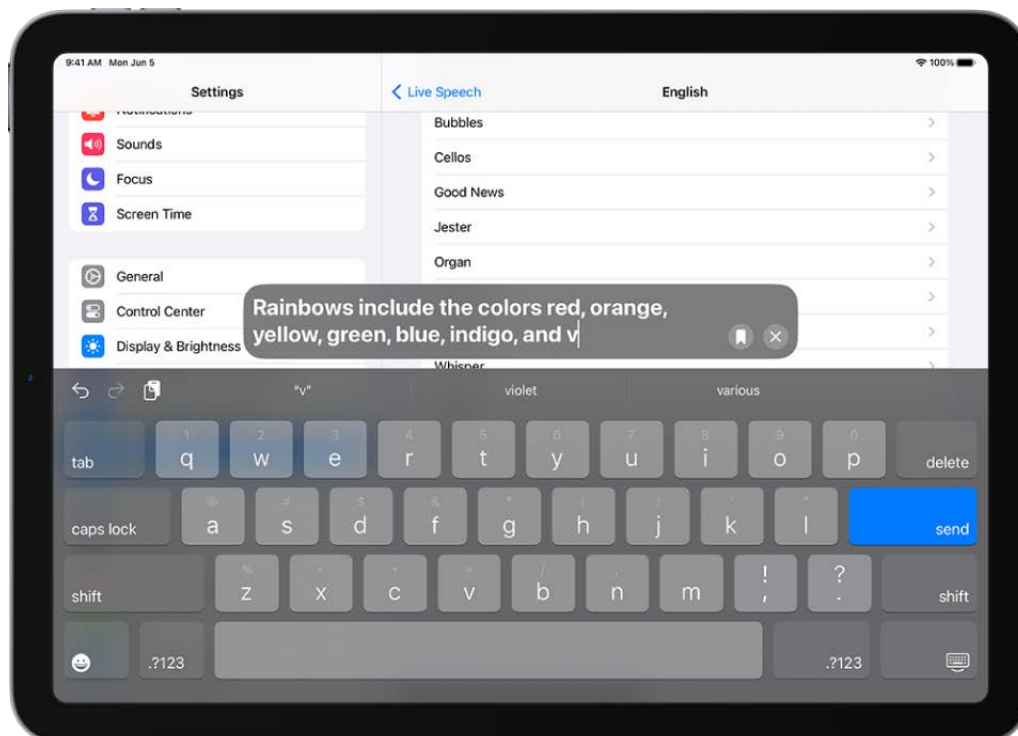
Set up speech-related accessibility features on iPad

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your speech needs. You can communicate with family, friends, and colleagues in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability.

Type words you want spoken	Live Speech
Record your voice	Personal Voice
Make Siri requests in text	Type to Siri
Use sound actions for Switch Control	Switch Control
Allow more time for Siri requests	Siri Pause Time

Type to speak using Live Speech on iPad

With Live Speech on iPad, you can type and have your words spoken in person, on FaceTime calls, and in assistive communication apps using any of dozens of voices, including your Personal Voice. (Available in select languages.)



-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Speech, then turn on Live Speech.
 2. Choose a voice. You can use Live Speech with any voice you choose, including your [Personal Voice](#).
 3. Triple-click the top button or Home button (depending on your iPad model), then do one of the following:
 - Type what you want to have spoken.
 - Tap suggested words that appear above the onscreen keyboard.
 - Paste copied text into the field.
 - Tap  to quickly access your Favorite Phrases. (You must have first added your most frequently used phrases in Settings > Accessibility > Live Speech > Favorite Phrases.)
 4. Tap Send to have your text spoken.
-

People hear your words spoken in the conversation if you're using the FaceTime app. Otherwise, they will come out of the speaker on your iPad.

Record your Personal Voice on iPad

If you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability, you can create a personalized voice on iPad to use with Live Speech. With Personal Voice, you can create a voice that sounds like your own to use to type to speak in FaceTime and assistive communication apps. (Available in select languages.)

-
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Personal Voice.
 2. Tap Create a Personal Voice, then follow the series of prompts.

(If you need to pause your recording session, tap Done. To resume, tap Continue Recording.)

Note: To see the option to create your Personal Voice, you must first [set a passcode](#).

Your Personal Voice is saved securely on your iPad for you to use during Phone and FaceTime calls, in-person conversations, and third-party alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) apps.

Important: You may only use Personal Voice to create a voice on your iPad that sounds like you using your own personal voice for your personal, noncommercial use. (Your [Legacy Contact](#) won't be able to access your Personal Voice.) See the Apple Support article [How to create a Personal Voice](#).

Cognitive

Set up cognitive-related accessibility features on iPad

In the Accessibility pane of Settings , you can customize options to best suit your cognitive needs. You can reduce distraction and sensory stimulus, turn on captions or audio features to read the content on your screen, and more.

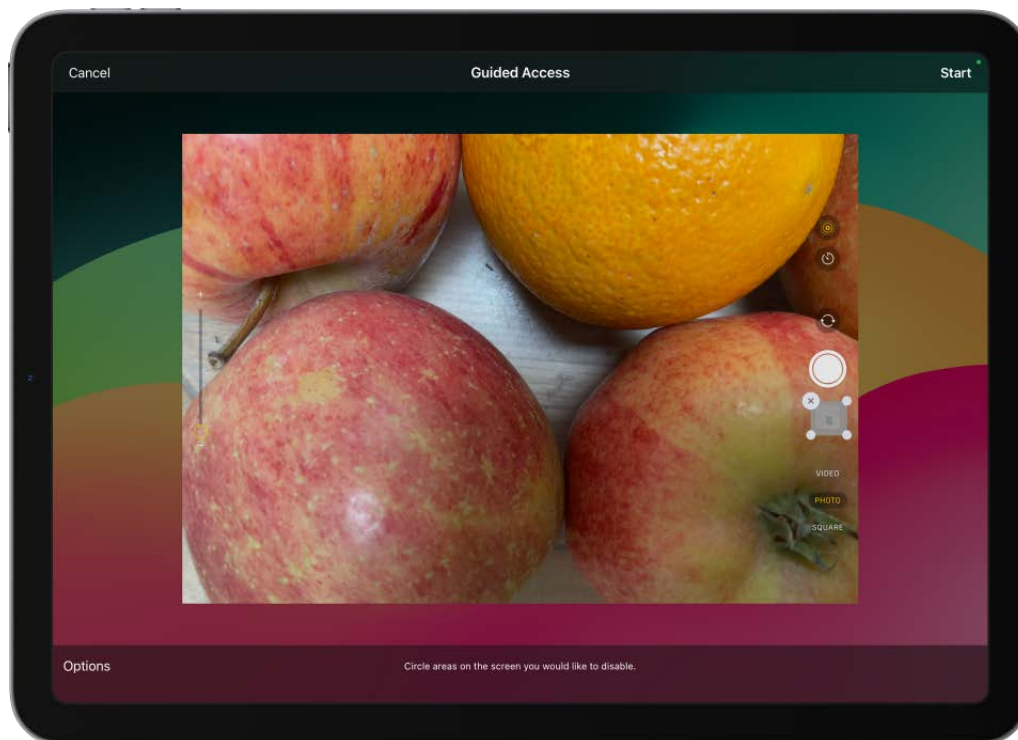
Reduce distraction and sensory stimulus	• Background sounds • Onscreen motion • Focus • Guided Access • Hide ads and distractions in Safari
Get help with everyday tasks	• Siri • Shortcuts
Pair audio and text	• Live Captions (beta) • Spoken content • Audio message transcripts
Let iPad type for you	• Dictation • Predictive text • Scribble
Keep an eye on your screen use	• Screen Time • App Limits
Locate people and things	• Find a friend • Find a device • Separation alerts
Simplify sign-ins	• Keychain • Face ID • Touch ID
Identify people and things	• Facial recognition • People detection • Image descriptions • Text detection • Point and Speak • Door detection

You can also set up Assistive Access, which gives those with cognitive disabilities the option to perform the most common tasks, such as taking photos and communicating with their inner circle of family and friends, while reducing cognitive load and offering more focused choices. See the [Assistive Access User Guide](#).

Use Guided Access on iPad

Guided Access helps you stay focused on a task by temporarily restricting iPad to a single app, and allowing you to control which app features are available. You can do any of the following:

- Disable areas of the screen that aren't relevant to a task, or areas where an accidental gesture might cause a distraction
- Disable the iPad hardware buttons
- Limit how long you can use the app



Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Passcode Settings*: Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.

You can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID as a way to end a Guided Access session.

- *Time Limits*: Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
- *Accessibility Shortcut*: Turn the shortcut on or off during Guided Access sessions.
- *Display Auto-Lock*: Set how long it takes iPad to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.

Start a Guided Access session

1. Open the app you want to use.

2. To turn on Guided Access, do one of the following:



Siri: Say something like: "Turn on Guided Access." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.

3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.

4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Top Button
- Volume Buttons
- Motion (to prevent iPad from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
- Keyboards
- Touch
- Time Limit

5. Tap Start.

End a Guided Access session

Do any of the following:

- *Use the Guided Access passcode:* Triple-click the Home button or top button (depending on your iPad model), then enter the Guided Access passcode.
 - *Use Touch ID:* On an iPad with [Touch ID turned on](#), double-click the Home button or top button (depending on your model), then unlock with Touch ID.
 - *Use Face ID:* On an iPad with [Face ID turned on](#), double-click the top button, then unlock with Face ID.
-

To set up an iPad with a limited interface, see the [Assistive Access User Guide](#).

Privacy and security

Use the built-in privacy and security protections of iPad

iPad is designed to protect your data and your privacy. Built-in privacy features minimize how much of your information is available to anyone but you, and you can adjust what information is shared and where you share it. Built-in security features help prevent anyone but you from accessing the data on your iPad and in iCloud.

To take maximum advantage of the privacy and security features built into iPad, follow these practices.

Protect access to your iPad

- *Set a strong passcode:* [Setting a passcode](#) to unlock iPad is the most important thing you can do to safeguard your device.
- *Use Face ID or Touch ID:* Face ID (supported models) or Touch ID (supported models) provides a secure and convenient way to unlock your iPad, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps. See [Set up Face ID on iPad](#) or [Set up Touch ID on iPad](#).
- *Turn on Find My iPad:* Find My helps you [find your iPad](#) if it's lost or stolen and prevents anyone else from activating or using your iPad if it's missing.
- *Control what features are available without unlocking your iPad:* [Disallow or allow access](#) to some commonly used features, such as Control Center and USB connections, when your device is locked.

Keep your Apple ID secure

Your Apple ID provides access to your data in iCloud and your account information for services like the App Store and Apple Music. To learn how to protect the security of your Apple ID, see [Keep your Apple ID secure on iPad](#).

Make account sign-ins safer and easier

For participating websites and apps, there are multiple ways to make sign-in more convenient and secure.

- *Sign in with passkeys:* Passkeys let you [sign in](#) to website and app accounts with Face ID or Touch ID instead of a password. Because a passkey doesn't leave the devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID, and because it's specific to the

website or app you create it for, it's protected from leaks and phishing attempts. And unlike a password, you don't have to create, guard, or remember it.

- *Use Sign in with Apple:* You can use your Apple ID instead of creating and remembering user names and passwords for signing in to accounts. [Sign in with Apple](#) also provides the security of two-factor authentication, and it limits the information shared about you.
- *Let iPad create strong passwords:* If passkey support or Sign in with Apple isn't available when you sign up for a service, let iPad automatically [create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

For all your website and app passwords, there are many other ways to make sign-in safer and easier.

- *Replace weak passwords:* If you create any weak or compromised passwords, iPad automatically [identifies them](#) for you to fix.
- *Share passkeys and passwords securely:* Use AirDrop to securely [share a passkey or password](#) with someone using their iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
- *Use the built-in authenticator for two-factor authentication:* For websites and apps that offer two-factor authentication, [fill in automatically generated verification codes](#) without relying on SMS messages or additional apps.
- *Keep passkeys and passwords up to date on all your devices:* iCloud Keychain automatically [keeps your credentials](#) up to date across your other devices.

Manage the information you share with people and apps

- *Control app tracking:* All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPad across websites and apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with a data broker. You can [change permission](#) later, and you can stop all apps from requesting permission.
- *Control what you share with apps:* You can review and adjust [the data you share with apps, the location information you share, the hardware you share, and how Apple delivers advertising to you in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks](#).
- *Review the privacy practices of apps:* [Go to the app's product page](#) in the App Store for a developer-reported summary of the app's privacy practices, including what data is collected. For the apps that you download, [review the App Privacy Report](#), which shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them.
- *Use Contact Key Verification:* You can use Contact Key verification to generate unique codes that you and your contacts can use to verify each other's identities. See [Use Contact Key Verification on iPad](#).

Protect your email privacy

- *Protect your Mail activity:* [Turn on Mail Privacy Protection](#) to make it harder for senders to learn about your Mail activity. Mail Privacy Protection hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or use it to determine your exact location. Mail Privacy Protection also prevents senders from seeing whether you've opened the email they sent you.
- *Hide your personal email address:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email allows you to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account. You don't have to share your personal email address when [filling out forms or signing up for newsletters](#) on the web, or when [sending email](#).

Protect your web browsing

- *Use the internet more privately with iCloud Private Relay:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can use iCloud Private Relay to [help prevent websites and network providers](#) from creating a detailed profile about you.
- *Manage your privacy, and help protect yourself against malicious websites:* Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites. See [Browse privately in Safari on iPad](#).

Lock down your iPad if it's facing a sophisticated cyberattack

If you find your iPad and personal accounts are targeted by sophisticated remote attacks, you can also help protect yourself with Lockdown Mode. Lockdown Mode offers an extreme level of security for the very few users who, because of who they are or what they do, may be personally targeted by some of the most sophisticated digital threats, such as those from private companies developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware. Lockdown Mode automatically protects Safari, Messages, Home, and many other Apple services and apps. Webpages and internet communications continue working, but with reduction in performance and usability. See [Harden your iPad from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode](#).

To get personalized support for these practices, go to the [Apple Support website](#) (not available in all countries or regions).

To learn how Apple designs security into the core of its platforms, see the [Apple Platform Security User Guide](#). To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the [Privacy website](#).

Protect access to your iPad

Set a passcode on iPad

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPad when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPad data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:

- Face ID & Passcode
- Touch ID & Passcode

2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

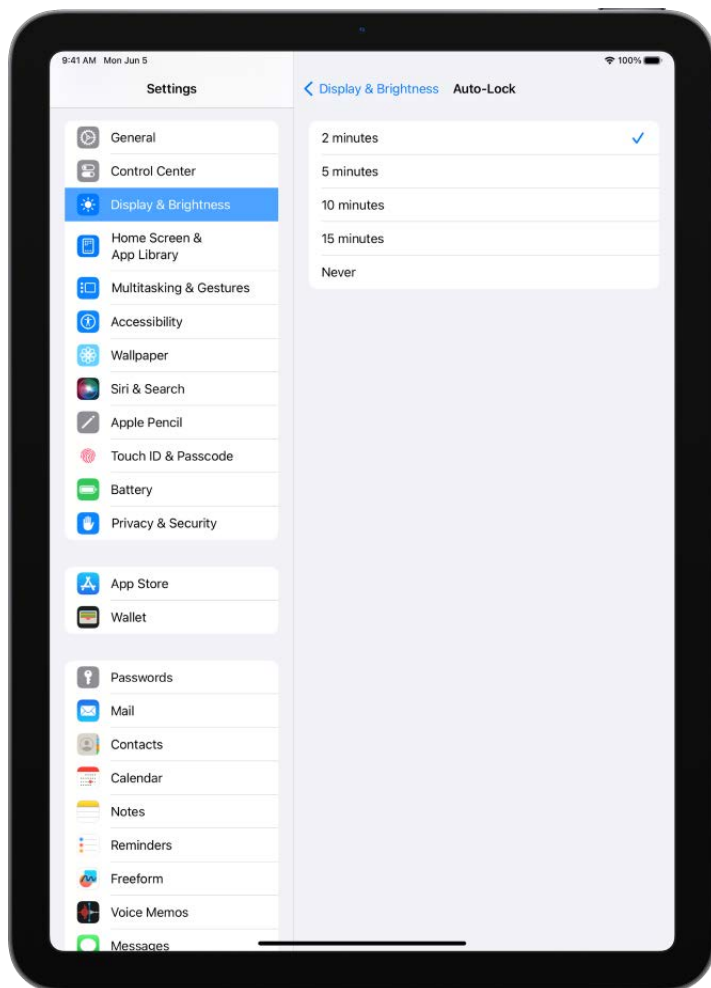
To view options for creating a password, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.

After you set a passcode, on supported models you can [use Face ID](#) or [Touch ID](#) to unlock iPad (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPad under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPad.
- You haven't unlocked your iPad for more than 48 hours.
- You haven't unlocked your iPad with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.
- Your iPad receives a remote lock command.
- There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPad with Face ID or Touch ID.

Change when iPad automatically locks

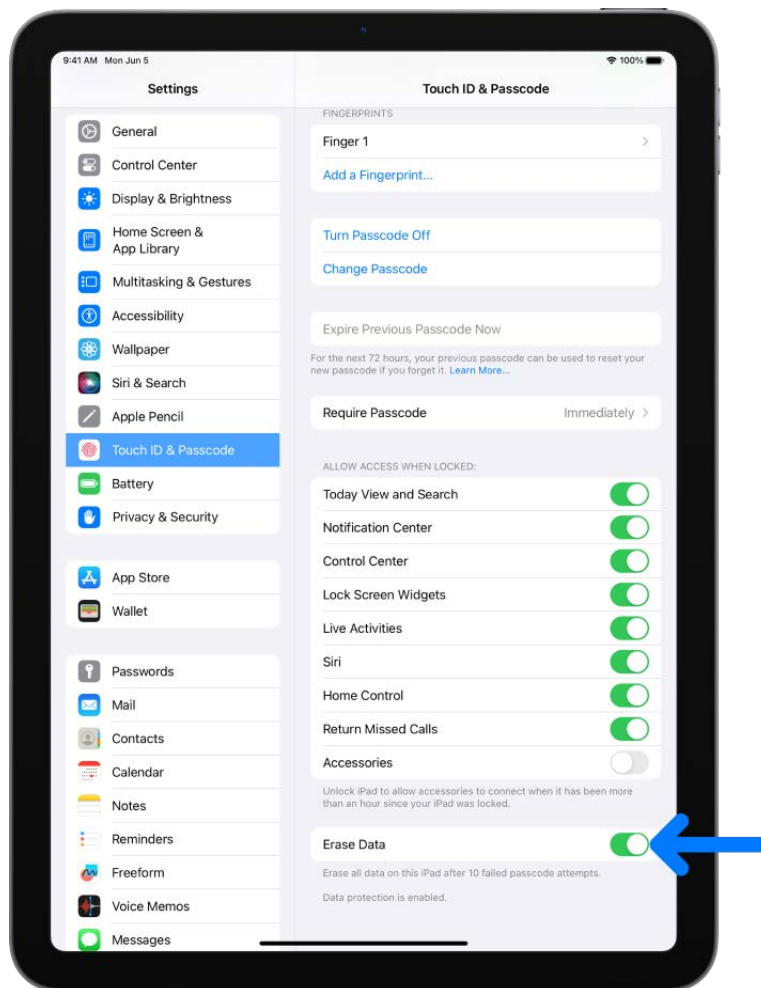
Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.



Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPad to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:
 - Face ID & Passcode
 - Touch ID & Passcode
 - Passcode
2. Turn on Erase Data.



Note: If you keep your iPad on the Home Screen and don't take any action, your Auto-Lock time is reduced by half.

After all data is erased, you must [restore iPad from a backup](#). If you didn't back up your iPad, you need to [set it up again as new](#).

Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:

- Face ID & Passcode
- Touch ID & Passcode
- Passcode

2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.

Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode six times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPad is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPad with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a new passcode. See the Apple Support article [If you forgot your iPad passcode](#).

Note: If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.

Set up Face ID on iPad

Use Face ID (supported models) to securely and conveniently unlock iPad, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPad.

To use Face ID, you must also [set a passcode](#) on your iPad.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPad, go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you have physical limitations, you can tap Accessibility Options during Face ID set up. When you do this, setting up facial recognition doesn't require the full range of head motion. Using Face ID is still secure, but it requires more consistency in how you look at iPad.

Face ID also has an accessibility feature you can use if you're blind or have low vision. If you don't want Face ID to require that you look at iPad with your eyes open, go to Settings > Accessibility > Face ID & Attention, then turn off Require Attention for Face ID. This feature is automatically turned off if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPad. See [Change Face ID and attention settings on iPad](#).

Temporarily disable Face ID

You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPad.

1. Press and hold the top button and either volume button for 2 seconds.
2. After the sliders appear, press the top button to immediately lock iPad.

iPad locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPad with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
 2. Do one of the following:
 - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more of the options.
 - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.
-

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device. See [Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPad](#).

For more information about Face ID, see [About Face ID advanced technology](#).

Set up Touch ID on iPad

On an iPad with a Home button, iPad (10th generation), iPad Air (4th generation and later), or iPad mini (6th generation), you can use Touch ID to securely and conveniently [unlock iPad](#), authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps.

To use Touch ID, you must [set a passcode](#) on your iPad.

Turn on fingerprint recognition

1. If you didn't turn on fingerprint recognition when you first set up your iPad, go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on any of the options, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your Apple ID password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.

Note: If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPad using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article [If Touch ID isn't working on your iPhone or iPad](#).

Add a fingerprint

You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.

2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Name or delete a fingerprint

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.

If you added more than one fingerprint, do one of the following to identify its print:

- *On an iPad with a Home button:* Rest a finger on the Home button.
- *On iPad (10th generation), iPad mini (6th generation), and iPad Air (4th generation and later):* Rest a finger on the top button.

2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as "Thumb") or tap Delete Fingerprint.

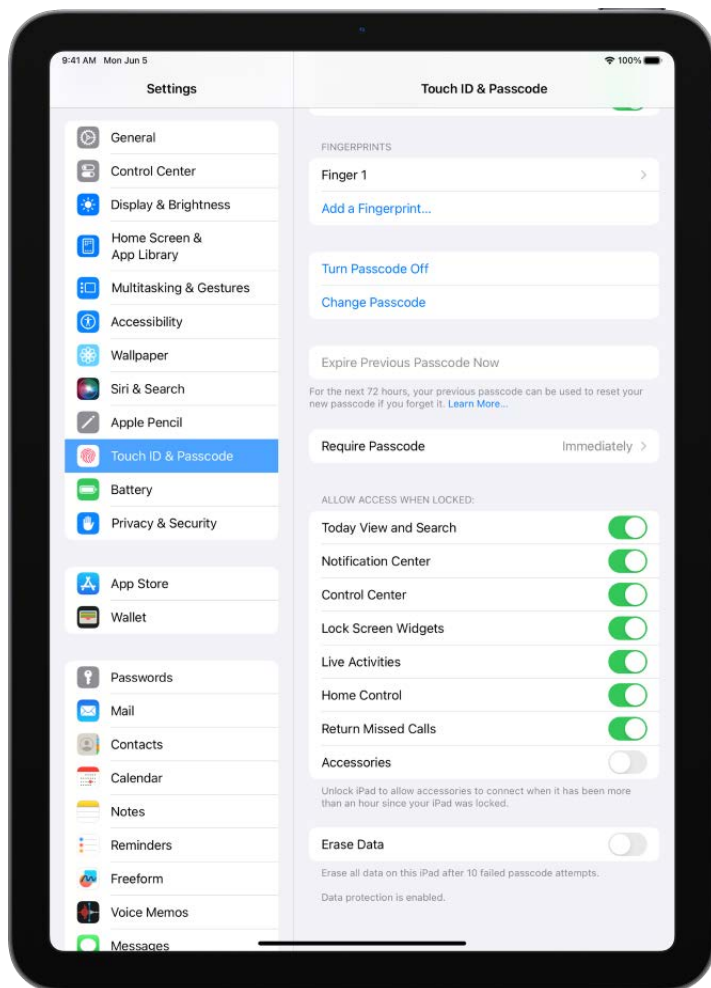
Turn off Touch ID

Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

Control access to information on the iPad Lock Screen

You can easily access a few commonly used features (such as widgets, media playback controls, and Control Center) from the Lock Screen. You can control access to these items when iPad is locked. (For security, USB connections aren't allowed when iPad is locked.)

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPad from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.



1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:

- Face ID & Passcode
- Touch ID & Passcode
- Passcode

2. Select your options.

You can turn access on or off to the following features while iPad is locked:

- Widgets (see [Add, edit, and remove widgets on iPad](#))
- Recent notifications (see [View and respond to notifications on iPad](#))
- Control Center (see [Use and customize Control Center on iPad](#))
- Siri (see [Use Siri on iPad](#))
- Home Control (see [Intro to Home on iPad](#))
- Returning Missed Calls (see [Make FaceTime calls on iPad](#))

- Connecting to a Mac, a Windows PC, or an accessory with USB (such as when you connect iPad to your computer using USB)

Important: If you change the default setting and allow USB connections when iPad is locked, you disable an important security feature of your iPad.

Keep your Apple ID secure on iPad

Your Apple ID is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, and more. Your account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple ID.

Best practices for maximizing the security of your Apple ID

- Don't let others use your Apple ID, even family members.

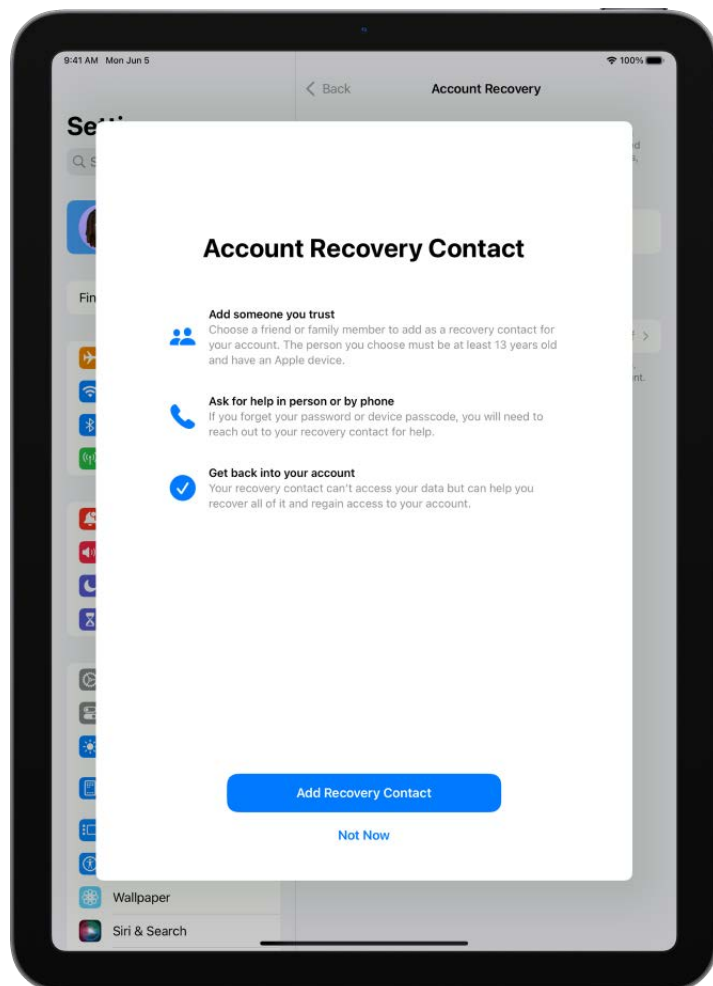
To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple IDs, [set up Family Sharing](#).

- Use two-factor authentication. If you created your Apple ID on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple ID account without two-factor authentication, turn on two-factor authentication.
- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.
- When accessing your Apple ID account page in Safari or another web browser, look for the lock icon  in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.
- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.
- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).
- Don't use your password with other online accounts.
- If one of your devices is lost or stolen, turn on [Lost Mode](#) as soon as possible for that device. (You can do this on a friend's device and don't need to use your own.)

Add Account Recovery Contacts

Choose one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you reset your Apple ID password and regain access to your account if you ever forget your password or get locked out.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security > Account Recovery, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.



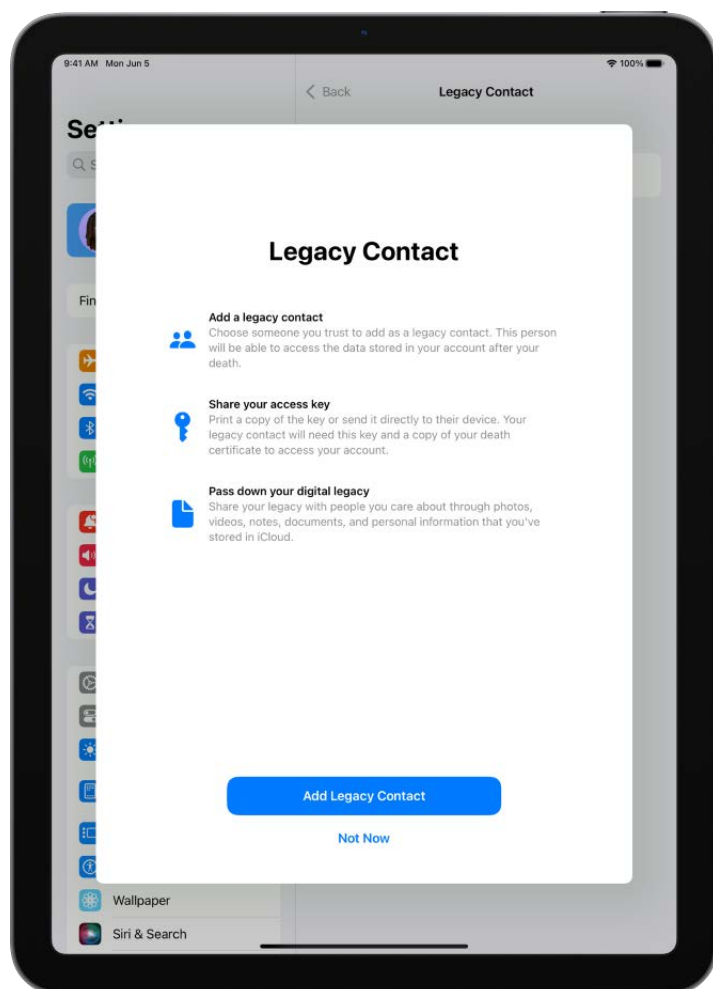
For more information, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap “Learn more” below Add Recovery Contact.

Add Legacy Contacts

The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your Apple ID account in the event of your death.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security > Legacy Contact, tap Add Legacy Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about how to share the access key with a legacy contact, how to remove a legacy contact, and how your legacy contact can request access to your account, see the Apple Support article [How to add a Legacy Contact for your Apple ID](#). Also see the Apple Support article [Data that a Legacy Contact can access](#).



Generate a recovery key for your account

For additional control over your account security, you have the option to generate a recovery key that helps you reset your account password or regain access to your Apple ID. A recovery key is a randomly generated 28-character code that you should keep in a safe place. You can reset your account password by either entering your recovery key or using another device already signed in with your Apple ID. To ensure you have access to your account, you are personally responsible for maintaining access to the recovery key and your trusted devices.

See the Apple Support article [How to generate a recovery key](#).

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article [Security and your Apple ID](#).

To set up or manage your Apple ID, go to the [Apple ID website](#).

If you forgot your Apple ID or password, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).

Make sign-ins safer and easier

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPad

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported apps and websites on your iPad.

Passkeys are more secure than passwords, because they're uniquely generated for every account by your own device, and are less vulnerable to phishing. And they work on all your devices that are signed in to the same Apple ID.

Like passwords, passkeys are encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple).

Note: To use passkeys, iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or tvOS 16 (or later) is required. [iCloud Keychain](#) and [two-factor authentication](#) must also be turned on.

Create and save a passkey using your iPad

You can create and save passkeys for apps and websites that support them.

Note: The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On your iPad, go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app and do one of the following:
 - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

Your passkey is saved.

Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the app or website doesn't currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPad at Settings > Passwords.

You can have a passkey and password for the same app or website, and find them both under the same account in Settings > Passwords.

You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See [Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPad](#).

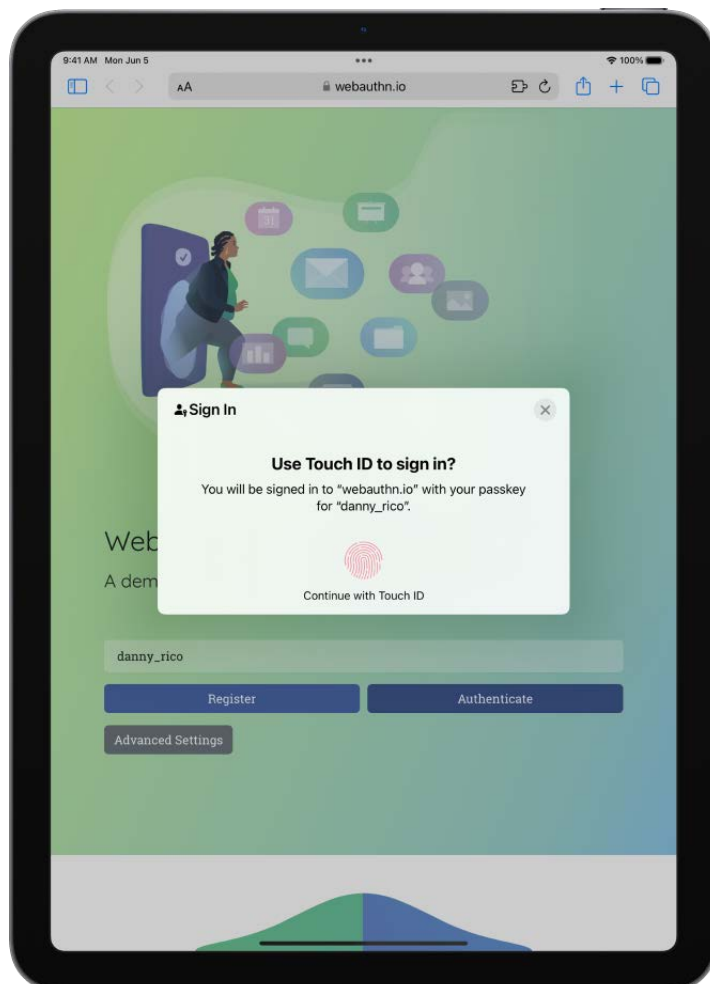
Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPad

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

Note: The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On your iPad, go to the website or app and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn't appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn't set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPad, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPad).

The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.



Use a passkey saved on your iPad to sign in on another device

If you're using a device not associated with your Apple ID (such as a computer at a public library, an Internet cafe, or a friend's house), and you have your iPad with you, you can sign in to apps or websites on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

Note: The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and enter your user name in the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Select "Other options," "Passkey from nearby device," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPad camera to scan the QR code.

The passkey that's saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

Create a passkey on a device that's not your own

If you have your iPad with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple ID (such as a computer at a public library, an Internet cafe, or a friend's house), and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of the device you're using to create the passkey.

Note: The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:
 - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.
 - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, select "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (instead of Continue).

Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the app or website doesn't currently support passkeys.

3. Select "Save a passkey on a device with a camera," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.

4. Use your iPad camera to [scan the QR code with your camera](#).

The passkey is saved to your iPad and iCloud Keychain.

Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you previously shared it with someone to whom you no longer want to give access).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in [Create and save a passkey using your iPad](#) or [Create a passkey on a device that's not your own](#).

Delete a passkey

1. Go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
2. Tap Delete Passkey.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

Sign in with Apple on iPad

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your Apple ID. You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires two-factor authentication for your Apple ID. This protects your Apple ID, your app accounts, and your app content.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple ID account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple ID, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPad. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Review the Apple ID that appears, then tap Continue.
3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple ID, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.
 2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.
-

Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for websites and apps

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Password and Security, then enter your Apple ID password if it's requested.
2. Tap Apps Using Your Apple ID.

All apps using Sign in with Apple appear in a list.

3. To change a setting for an app, choose the app, then do any of the following:
 - *Turn off forwarding email:* Turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
 - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Stop Using Apple ID. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in with the app.

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPhone, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple ID and password. For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is Sign in with Apple?](#)

Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPad

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords and passkeys with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords and passkeys. When a shared password changes, it changes on everyone's device.

Create a group

Note: To create a shared password group, you must be signed in with your Apple ID.

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords.
2. Tap  in the top-right corner, then tap New Shared Group.
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap  Add People (under Group Members).
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person you want to add, then tap Add.

Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app, have an iOS device or Mac using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS Sonoma, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPad, iPhone, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

5. Tap Create.
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap Move in the top-right corner.

If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap Not Now in the top-left corner.

7. You are given the choice to notify the people you have added to the group that they have been invited. If you choose not to, they can also access the invitation by going to Passwords > Group Invitations.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You'll receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group.

Note: If you move a password into the shared group, you can access the password only on a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS Sonoma, or later.

Manage a group

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. On your iPad, open Settings, then tap Passwords.
2. Tap the name of your group, then tap Manage.

You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.

3. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Respond to an invitation to a group

Note: To respond to any invitation, iPadOS 17 or later must be installed on your iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords > Group Invitations and tap the invitation.
2. Tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

Important: Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPad

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPad create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPad [stores the passwords](#) in iCloud Keychain and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple ID to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See [Sign in with Apple on iPad](#).
- *A passkey:* Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPad](#).

Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to iCloud Keychain usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

For supported websites and apps, iPad suggests a unique, complex password.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
- *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
- *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.
- *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
- *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
- *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.

3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.

4. To [securely add and keep notes](#) about recovery key information, security questions,

PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.

To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account.

5. To later allow iPad to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
 - Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap  on the sign-in screen.

Prevent iPad from automatically filling in passwords

Go to Settings  > Passwords > Password Options, then turn off AutoFill Passwords.

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPad

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPad automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPad can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations.

If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.

2. Tap an account.
3. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.
4. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to [upgrade to Sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPad to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPad warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPad and iCloud Keychain. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then tap an account.
2. In the Security Recommendation section, tap , then tap Hide.

To view the recommendation later, go to Settings > Passwords > Security Recommendations, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Hidden Security Recommendations. To reshow all security recommendations, tap Reset Hidden Security Recommendations.

Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPad can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Go to Settings  > Passwords > Security Recommendations, then turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.

View your passwords and related information on iPad

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPad. iCloud Keychain securely [keeps this information up to date](#) across all your approved devices.

View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:
 - Say something like: "Show me my passwords." [Learn how to use Siri](#).
 - Go to Settings  > Passwords.
 - On a sign-in screen, tap .
 2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.
 3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.
-

View and copy a password for a Wi-Fi network

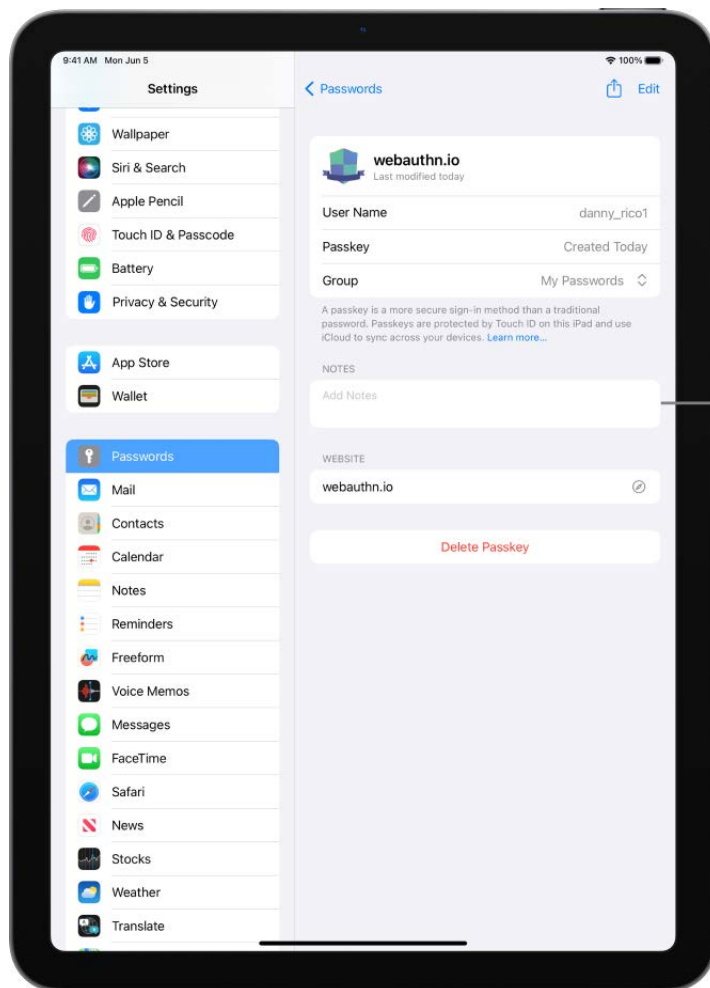
1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi.

If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. To see a list of all saved Wi-Fi networks, tap Edit at the top right.
 2. Tap  next to a network name.
 3. Tap the Password field.
 4. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy.
-

Add notes for an account with a passkey or password

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Tap Add Notes, enter your text, then tap Done.



Add a Note.

COMMENT: #ba #url

To view the notes later, go to Settings > Passwords, then tap the account. To update the notes, tap Edit (at the top right), then tap the Notes field.

Go to the website for an account

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap .
 - Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

Remove an account from your iPad and iCloud Keychain

Go to Settings  > Passwords, then swipe left on the account.

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

Note: This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

Remove a passkey or password from your iPad and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then tap an account.
2. Tap Delete Password or Delete Passkey.

Note: This action doesn't remove the passkey or password from the website or app where you created it.

Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPad

Use AirDrop to securely share passkeys and passwords for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

Note: To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see [View and copy a password for a Wi-Fi network](#).

Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passkeys and passwords.

- [iCloud Keychain must be set up](#) on your iPad.
 - The person you're sharing with [must be in your contacts list](#) in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
 - You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.
-

Send a passkey or password

To share with someone on iPad or iPhone, ask them to open Control Center and [allow AirDrop to receive items](#). To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. On your iPad, go to Settings  > Passwords.
 2. Tap the account you want to share.
 3. Tap , then select the device or picture of the person you want to send the passkey or password to.
-

Receive a passkey or password

1. If you haven't already done so, [allow AirDrop to receive items](#).
2. When you receive a request to accept a passkey or password from someone else, tap Accept.

The passkey or password is saved to your iPad, where you can [view its information](#) and let iPad automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The passkey or password is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're signed in with your Apple ID.

Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPad and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passkeys and passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers (iOS 7, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.9, or later required—except for passkeys, which require iPadOS 16, iOS 16, macOS 13, or tvOS 16, or later). iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPad, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Passwords and Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain synchronization across devices provides convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've [added a recovery contact](#) to your Apple ID account, your contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. To learn how, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple ID on a new device, then respond to an SMS [sent to a trusted phone number](#). After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked, and you must contact Apple Support on the [Apple Support website](#) to be granted more attempts.

To learn more about iCloud Keychain, see the Apple Support article [Set up iCloud Keychain](#).

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPad

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPad can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPhone, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPad camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPad, use the camera to scan the QR code.
3. On iPad, select your account for the website or app.

A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPad.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then [select and copy](#) the setup key.
3. Go to Settings  > Passwords, then select your account for the website or app.
4. Tap Set Up Verification Code, then tap Enter Setup Key.
5. Tap the Setup Key field, tap Paste, then tap OK.
6. Tap the Verification Code field, then tap Copy Verification Code.
7. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code where directed.

Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.
3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

If no suggestion appears, go to Settings  > Passwords, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code into the field.

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the app or website you're signing in to. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to Settings, then tap Passwords.
2. Tap Password Options, then turn Clean Up Automatically on or off.

Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPad

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPad and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then turn Automatic Verification on or off.

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple ID on iPad

Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your Apple ID account, even if they know your Apple ID password. When it's on, you need both your Apple ID password and a six-digit verification code to sign into your Apple ID account. The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple ID, or displayed on your trusted devices.

Two-factor authentication for Apple ID is available in iOS 17, iPadOS 17, OS X 13, or later.

Note: Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of two-factor authentication for Apple ID](#).

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. On your iPad go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.
3. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.

A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.

4. Enter the verification code on your iPad.

Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple ID, and your iPad is now a trusted device.

Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPad, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple ID account.

1. On the device you want to add, Sign in with your Apple ID you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPad, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple ID account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple ID password for security reasons.

Note: A trusted device must use iOS 17, iPadOS 17, or OS X 13 (or later).

Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then enter your device passcode when prompted.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
 - *Remove a number:* Tap  next to the phone number.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings  > [your name].

A list of the devices associated with your Apple ID appears near the bottom of the screen.

2. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to sign in to your Apple ID again.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple ID account

To sign in to your Apple ID account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, you need to generate an app-specific password.

1. Sign in to your [Apple ID account](#).
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap "Generate an app-specific password."
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Sign in to apps with your AppleID using app-specific passwords](#).

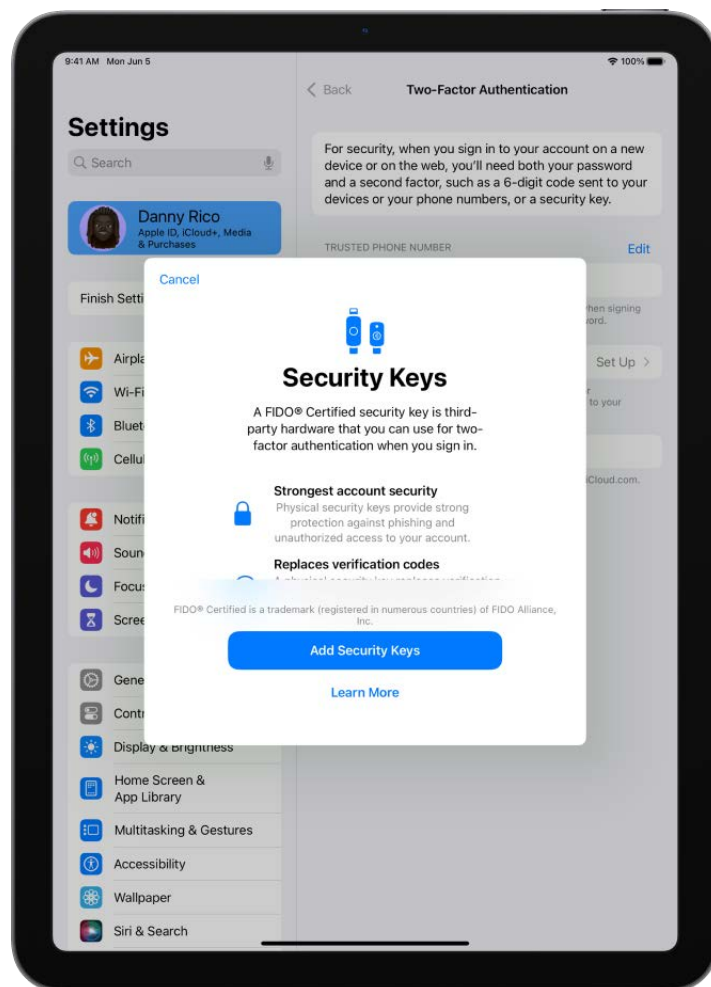
Use security keys to sign in to your Apple ID account on iPad

About security keys

Security Keys for Apple ID is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPad and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple ID account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article [About security keys for Apple ID](#).



Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

Note: NFC security keys are not currently supported on iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
 2. Tap Add Security Keys, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key.
 2. Follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Use a security key to reset your Apple ID password

If you forget your Apple ID password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security. (If you aren't already signed in to your Apple ID account on your iPad, first use your paired security key to sign in.)
 2. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.
-

Use a security key to unlock your Apple ID

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple ID account, or if your iPad detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple ID is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.

1. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple ID.
 2. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.
 3. Tap Done.
-

Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple ID. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Security Keys.
3. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

Note: If you remove all security keys from your Apple ID account, the account reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.

Manage what you share with apps

Control app tracking permissions on iPad

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPad across websites or apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with data brokers. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Tracking.

The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.

2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

For more information about app tracking, tap Learn More near the top of the screen.

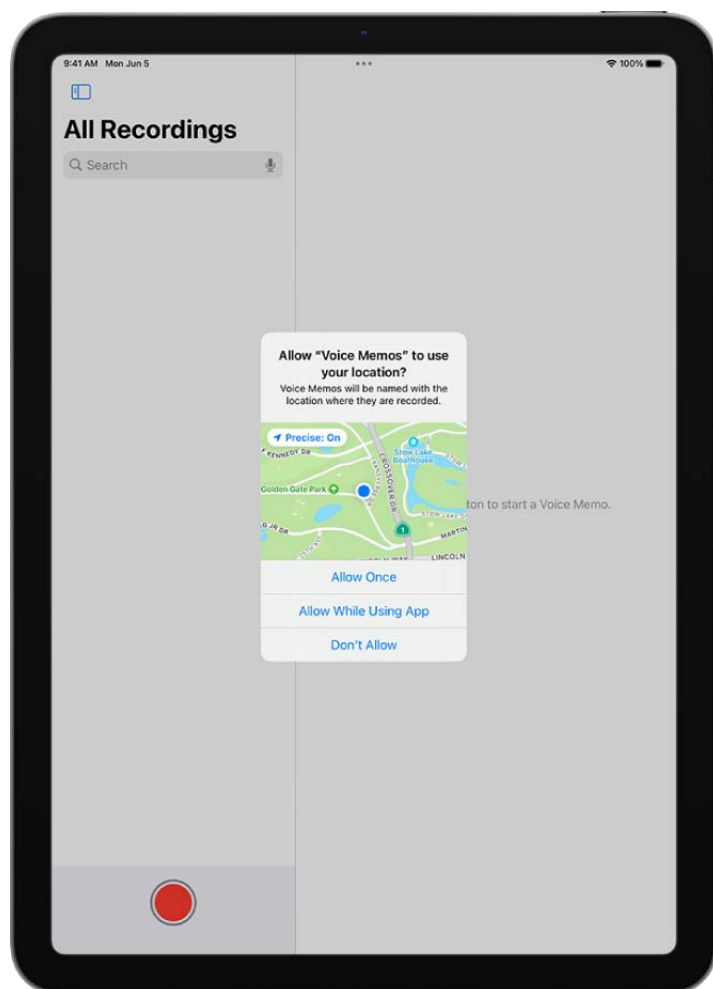
Control the location information you share on iPad

You control whether iPad and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks (iPad models with Wi-Fi + Cellular), your Bluetooth® connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network (iPad models with Wi-Fi + Cellular, if you have Cellular Data turned on). When an app is using Location Services,  appears in the status bar.

When you set up iPad, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.

The first time an app wants location data from your iPad, you receive a request with an explanation. Some apps may make a one-time only request for your location. Other apps may ask you to share your location now and in the future. Whether you grant or deny ongoing access to your location, you can change an app's access later.



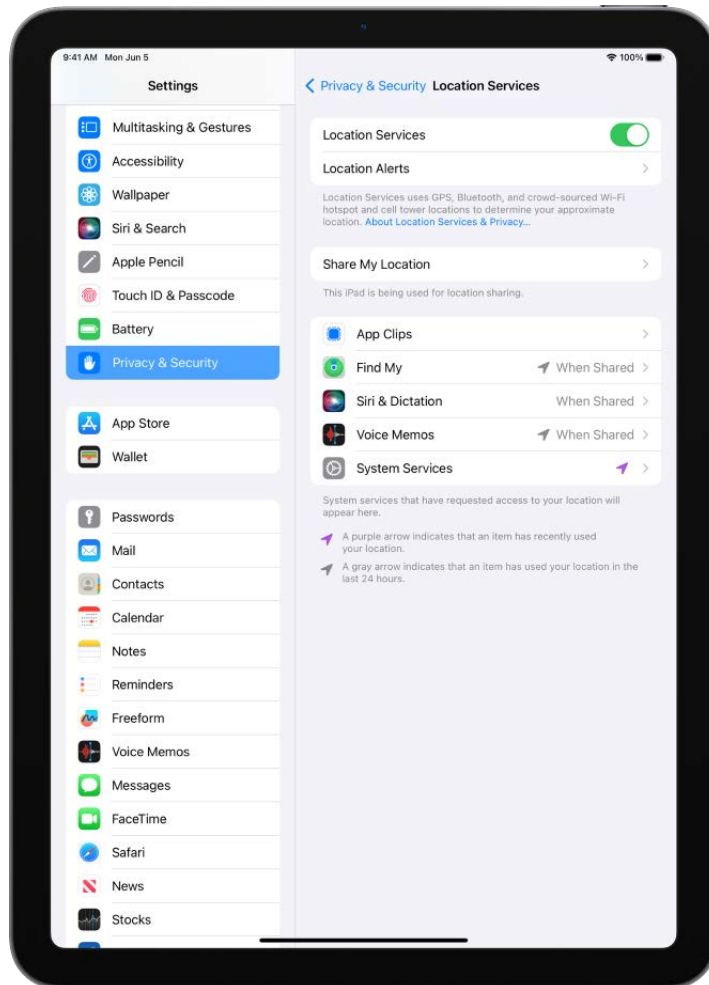
Turn on Location Services

If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPad, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

Important: If you turn off Location Services, many important iPad features stop working.

Review or change an app's ongoing access to location information

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.



To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

Note: If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article [About privacy and Location Services in iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS](#).

Hide the map in Location Services alerts

When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.

To hide the map, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.

To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show  in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

Control access to information in apps on iPad

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security, then tap App Privacy Report.

The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity.

To turn off the report and delete its data, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > App Privacy Report, then tap Turn Off App Privacy Report. You can return to this Settings screen to turn the report on again.

Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPad

You control how Apple delivers advertising.

Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than your Apple ID.

Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.

The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

Turn personalized ads on or off

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

Note: Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

Control access to hardware features on iPad

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPad, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth® connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth, Local Network, or Microphone.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Note: Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone without the camera. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.

Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings on iPad

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web, or when sending email.

You can create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings . Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Hide My Email, then do any of the following:

- *Create a Hide My Email address:* Tap Create New Address, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Deactivate a Hide My Email address:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), then tap Deactivate Email Address. After you deactivate the address, it no longer forwards emails to you.

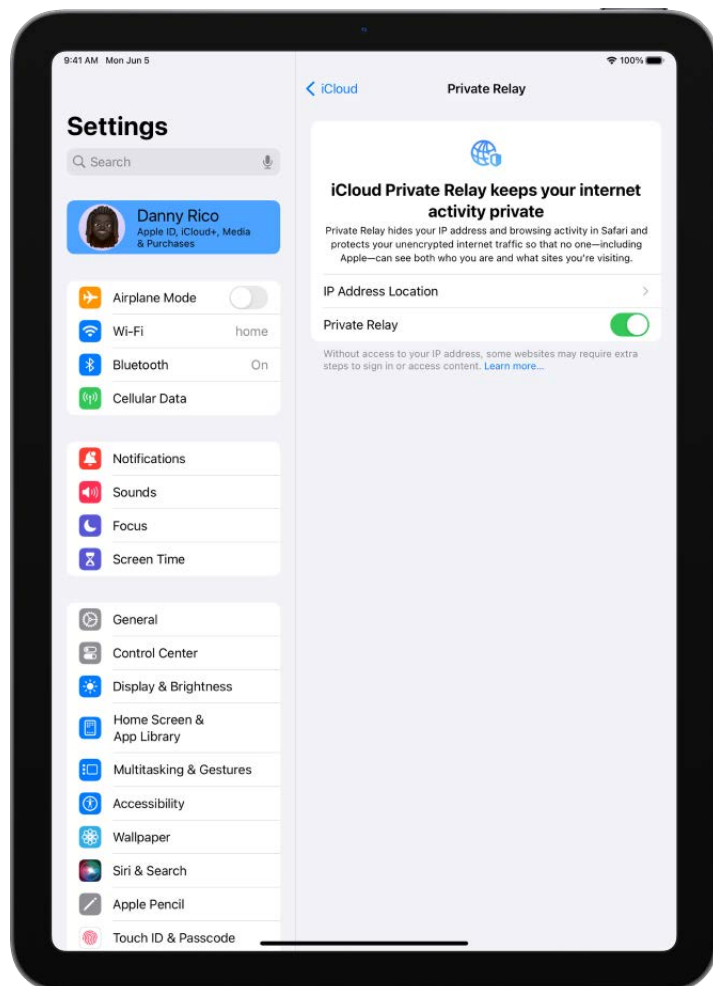
- *Change which personal email address to forward to:* Tap Forward To, then choose an email address. Options consist of addresses that are available with your Apple ID.
- *Copy a forwarding address to use elsewhere:* Tap an address (below Create New Address), touch and hold the Hide My Email section, then tap Copy. To immediately use that address elsewhere, touch and hold in a text field, then tap Paste.

You can also generate Hide My Email addresses in Safari and Mail wherever email addresses are required. In supporting apps, you can also generate a Hide My Email address when an email address is required by tapping the email address field, then tapping Hide My Email above the keyboard.

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPad

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is on, the traffic leaving your iPad is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while preventing network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#) website.



Turn iCloud Private Relay on

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.

Note: You need to turn on iCloud Private Relay on each device where you want to use it.

Turn iCloud Private Relay off

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.
2. Do one of the following:

- *Turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily:* Tap Turn Off Until Tomorrow.

Within 24 hours, iCloud Private Relay will turn back on automatically. If you want it to resume sooner, follow the instructions for turning it on at any time.

- *Turn off iCloud Private Relay completely:* Tap Turn Off Private Relay.

For information about turning off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for a specific website, see [Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address](#).

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi.
2. Tap , then turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

If you turn off Limit IP Address Tracking for a Wi-Fi network on your iPad, iCloud Private Relay is turned off for this network across all your devices where you're signed in with the same Apple ID.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a cellular network (Wi-Fi + Cellular models)

1. Go to Settings  > Cellular Data, then do one of the following:
 - *If your iPad has a single plan:* Tap Cellular Data Options.
 - *If your iPad has multiple plans:* Select a plan (below Cellular Plans).
2. Turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

The network setting is specific to a physical SIM or eSim in your iPad (eSIM not available in all countries or regions). See [View or change your cellular data account](#).

Set the specificity of your IP address location

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay > IP Address Location, then choose one of the following:

- Maintain General Location (for example, to see local content in Safari)
- Use Country and Time Zone (to make your location more obscure)

iCloud Private Relay is not available in all countries or regions.

Use a private network address on iPad

To help protect your privacy, your iPad uses a unique private network address, called a *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPad as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi, then tap  for a network.
2. Turn Private Address off.

Important: For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPad across different Wi-Fi networks.

Use Advanced Data Protection for your iCloud data

By default, iCloud secures your information by encrypting it when it's in transit, storing it in an encrypted format, and securing your encryption keys in Apple data centers. In addition, many Apple services use end-to-end encryption; your information is encrypted using keys derived from your devices and your device passcode, which only you know.

For the highest level of cloud data security, you can turn on Advanced Data Protection (iPadOS 16.2 or later required). It uses end-to-end encryption on more data categories such as the following:

- Device backup
- Messages backup
- iCloud Drive
- Notes
- Photos
- Reminders
- Safari bookmarks
- Siri Shortcuts
- Voice Memos
- Wallet passes

With Advanced Data Protection, your protected data can be decrypted only on your trusted devices, protecting your information even in the case of a data breach in the cloud. Not even Apple can access your information.

For detailed information about the requirements for using Advanced Data Protection, see the Apple Support article [How to turn on Advanced Data Protection for iCloud](#).

Turn on Advanced Data Protection

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, then tap Advanced Data Protection.
2. Tap Turn On Advanced Data Protection.
3. If you haven't set up a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key, tap Account Recovery, tap Set Up Account Recovery, then follow the onscreen instructions.

WARNING: If you use Advanced Data Protection, you're responsible for your data recovery. Because Apple won't have the keys required to recover your data, you'll need to have a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key set up on your account. You can use these additional recovery methods to regain access to your data if you ever forget your password or lose access to your account.

If you choose to turn off Advanced Data Protection later, your iCloud data will revert to the standard level of security.

Harden your iPad from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode

Lockdown Mode is an extreme protection feature for iPad. Protections include safer wireless connectivity defaults, media handling, media sharing defaults, sandboxing, and network security optimizations.

Lockdown Mode is optional and should be used only if you believe you might be targeted by a highly sophisticated cyberattack, such as by a private company developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware.

Important: Most people are never targeted by attacks of this nature.

When iPad is in Lockdown Mode, it doesn't function as it typically does. Apps, websites, and features are strictly limited for security, and some functionality isn't available.

Learn about Lockdown Mode

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Learn More.

Turn on Lockdown Mode

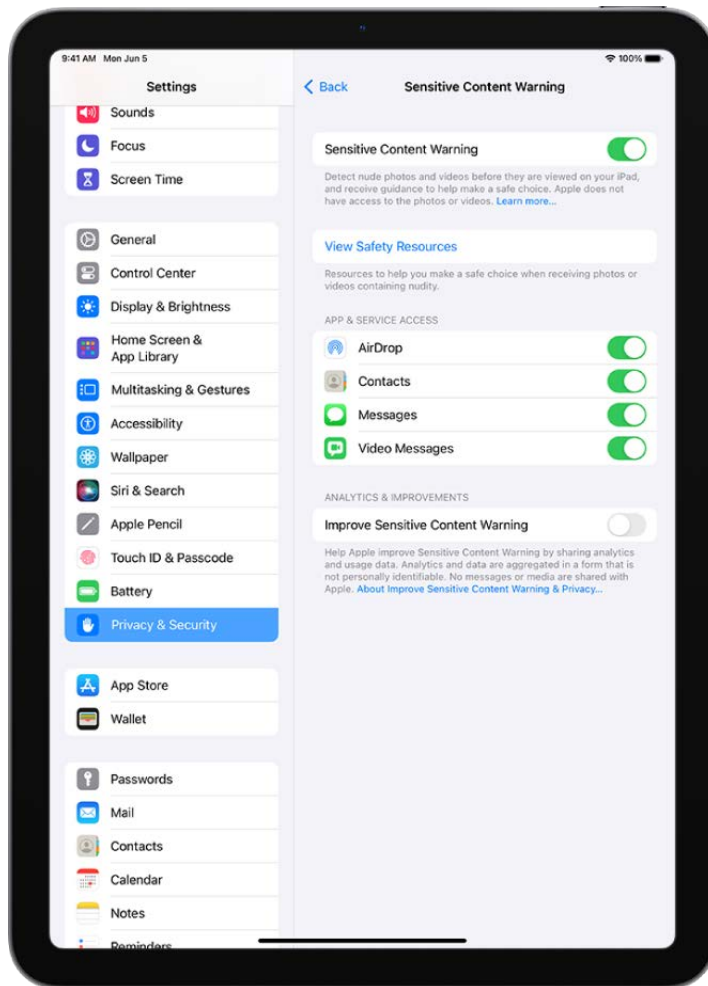
Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then turn on Lockdown Mode.

Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPad

You can have your iPad (or your family member's iPad) check for sensitive images and warn you before you view them.

Turn on Sensitive Content Warning

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Sensitive Content Warning, then turn on Sensitive Content Warning.



You (or your family member) will receive a warning before receiving or sending sexually explicit photos.

Note: Sensitive Content Warning is turned on automatically if you set up Screen Time and turn on Communication Safety. See [Check for sensitive images on a family member's iPad](#).

In Screen Time, you can also block inappropriate content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Allow or block communication on a family member's device](#).

Use Contact Key Verification on iPad

You can use Contact Key Verification to receive automatic alerts that help verify you're communicating only with the people you intend. You can also generate unique codes that you and your contacts can compare simultaneously in the Messages app  to further verify each other's identities. Additionally, you can post your Public Verification Code to a social media account so other people can confirm that it's you when they send you a message, and you can save other people's codes in the Contacts app .

Note: Contact Key Verification is designed to prevent highly sophisticated cyberattacks; it isn't designed to prevent fraud such as phishing or other text-based scams. To learn more about Contact Key Verification and troubleshooting, see the Apple Support article [About iMessage Contact Key Verification](#).

Before you begin

To use Contact Key Verification, make sure of the following:

- Your devices are using iOS 17.2, iPadOS 17.2, watchOS 9.2, and macOS 14.2, or later, and are passcode or password protected.
- You're signed into iCloud and iMessage with the same Apple ID and you have two-factor authentication turned on for your Apple ID.
- The person you're trying to verify is in your contacts.

Turn on Contact Key Verification

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Contact Key Verification.
2. Turn on Verification in iMessage, then tap Continue.

Note: When you turn on Contact Key Verification, you're prompted to update all of your Apple devices to compatible software. If you have a device that can't be updated, you need to sign out of iMessage on that device before you can turn on this feature.

Share a Public Verification Code

You can share your Public Verification Code in a message, or post it on a social media account so other people can verify your identity.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Contact Key Verification.
2. Tap Show Public Verification Code.

3. To share your Public Verification Code, tap Copy Verification Code, tap OK, then paste the code wherever you want to share it.

You can also use someone else's Public Verification Code to verify their identity. For example, if someone shares a Public Verification Code with you that doesn't match the code they have displayed on their social media profile, you should stop sending them messages until you can confirm their identity.

Generate verification codes in Messages

For a higher level of security, you and your contacts can generate a verification code in Messages, then save each other's Public Verification Codes in Contacts. This is useful when you want to verify each other simultaneously, or if the Public Verification Code you received doesn't match the one your contact shares with you.

1. Open the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the person's name at the top of the conversation, scroll down, then tap Verify Contact.

When the other person taps Verify Contact on their device, a contact verification code appears.

3. Compare the verification codes on both devices, then do one of the following:
 - *If the codes match:* Tap Mark as Verified, tap Update to add the verification code to the other person's contact card, then tap Done.
 - *If the codes don't match:* You might not be communicating with the person that you intend. Tap No Match, then stop sending messages to the person until you can verify their identity.

After you verify a contact, a checkmark appears next to their name in Messages. You can also check their verification status in the Conversation Details, or find their Public Verification Code in Contacts.

Restart, update, reset, and restore

Turn iPad on or off

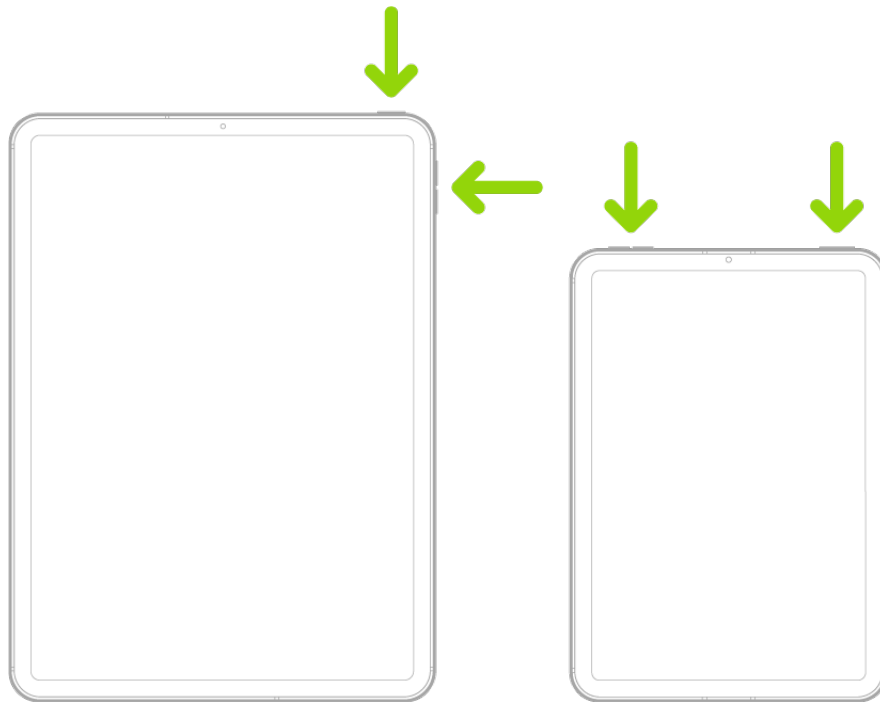
Use the top button to turn on iPad. You can use the top button (along with either volume button on some models) or Settings  to turn off iPad.

If your iPad isn't working as expected, you can try restarting it by turning it off, then turning it back on. If turning it off and on doesn't fix the issue, try [forcing it to restart](#).

Turn iPad on or off (models with Face ID or with Touch ID in the top button)

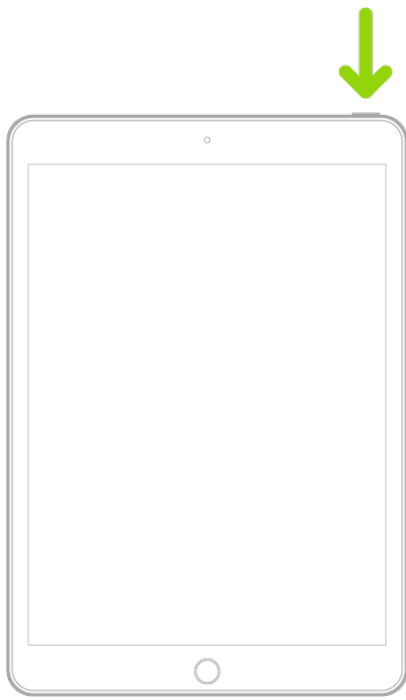
If your iPad doesn't have the Home button, do the following:

- *Turn on iPad:* Press and hold the top button until the Apple logo appears.
- *Turn off iPad:* Simultaneously press and hold the top button and either volume button, then drag the slider.



Turn iPad on or off (models with the Home button)

- *Turn on iPad:* Press and hold the top button until the Apple logo appears.
- *Turn off iPad:* Press and hold the top button, then drag the slider.



To turn off any model, you can go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

Force restart iPad

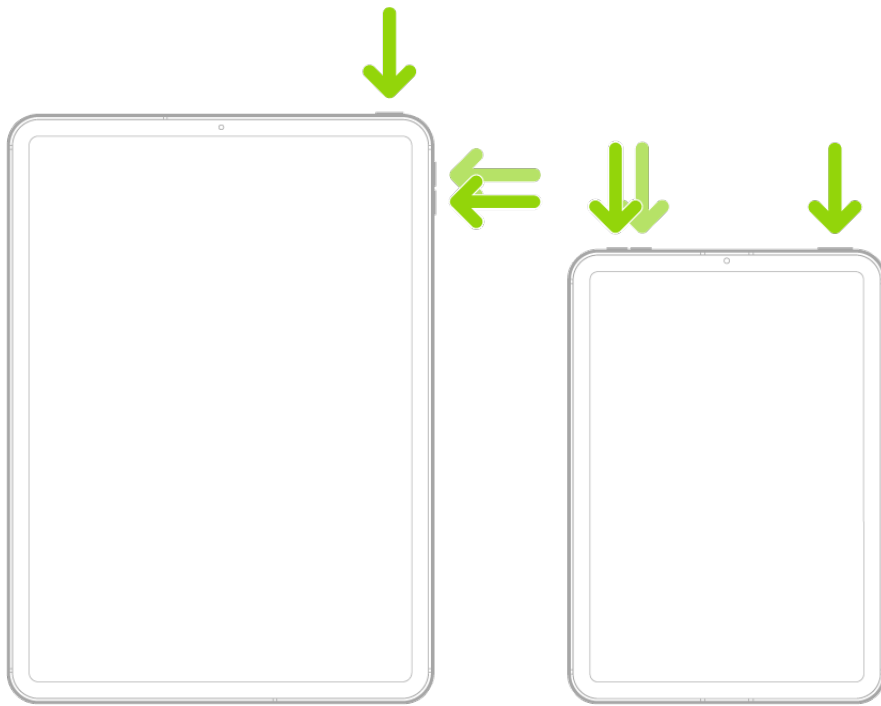
If iPad isn't responding, and you can't restart it by [turning it off then on](#), try forcing it to restart.

Note: If iPad doesn't restart after you try these steps, see the Apple Support article [If your iPad won't turn on or is frozen](#). Or if your iPad isn't working as expected after you restart it, see the [iPad Support website](#).

Force restart iPad (models with Face ID or with Touch ID in the top button)

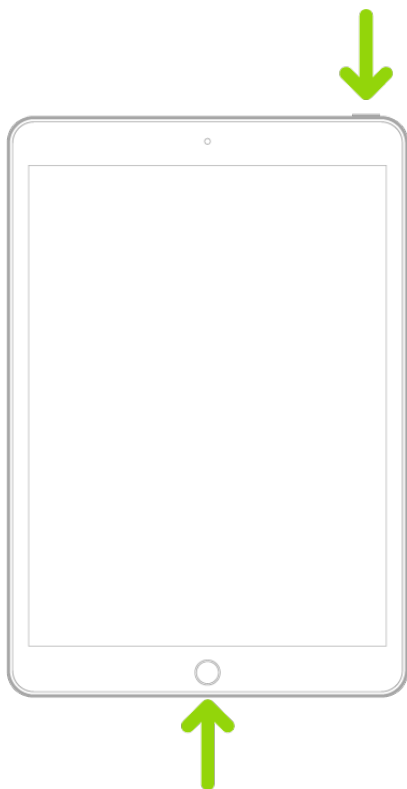
If your iPad doesn't have the Home button, do the following:

1. Press and quickly release the volume button nearest to the top button.
2. Press and quickly release the volume button farthest from the top button.
3. Press and hold the top button.
4. When the Apple logo appears, release the top button.



Force restart iPad (models with the Home button)

Press and hold the top button and the Home button at the same time. When the Apple logo appears, release both buttons.



Update iPadOS

When you update to the latest version of iPadOS, your data and settings remain unchanged.

Before you update, set up iPad to [back up](#) automatically, or back up your iPad manually.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Update iPad automatically

If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPad, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.
2. Turn on iOS Updates below Automatically Install and Automatically Download.

When an update is available, iPad downloads and installs the update overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

Update iPad manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

Go to Settings  > General > Software Update.

The screen shows the currently installed version of iPadOS and whether an update is available.

To turn off automatic updates, go to Settings > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.

Update using your computer

1. [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable.](#)
2. Do one of the following:
 - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPad, then click General at the top of the window.
 - *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPad near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.

Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#).

3. Click Check for Update.
 4. To install an available update, click Update.
-

See the Apple Support articles [Update to the latest iOS](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Back up iPad

You can back up iPad using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see [About backups for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

 **Tip:** If you replace your iPad, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See [Restore all content to iPad from a backup](#).

Back up iPad using iCloud

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup.
2. Turn on iCloud Backup.

iCloud automatically backs up your iPad daily when iPad is connected to power, locked, and connected to Wi-Fi.

Note: On Wi-Fi + Cellular models that support 5G, your carrier may give you the option to back up iPad using your cellular network. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup, then turn on or off Backup Over Cellular.

3. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

To view your iCloud backups, go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Manage Account Storage > Backups. To delete a backup of the device you're using, choose a backup from the list, then tap Turn Off and Delete from iCloud. To delete a backup of a different device using the same Apple ID, tap Delete.

Note: If you turn on an app or feature to use iCloud syncing (in Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Show All), its information is stored in iCloud. Because the information is automatically kept up to date on all your devices, it's not included in your iCloud backup. See the Apple Support article [What does iCloud back up?](#).

Back up iPad using your Mac

1. [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable.](#)

2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPad.

To use the Finder to back up iPad, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to back up iPad.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.

4. Select "Back up all of the data on your iPad to this Mac."

5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select "Encrypt local backup."

6. Click Back Up Now.

Note: You can also connect iPad to your computer wirelessly if you [set up syncing over Wi-Fi](#).

Back up iPad using your Windows PC

1. [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable.](#)

2. In the iTunes app on your PC, click the iPad button near the top left of the iTunes window.

3. Click Summary.

4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).

5. To encrypt your backups, select "Encrypt local backup," type a password, then click Set Password.

To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

Note: You can also connect iPad to your computer wirelessly if you [set up syncing over Wi-Fi](#).

Return iPad settings to their defaults

You can return settings to their defaults without erasing your content.

If you want to save your settings, [back up iPad](#) before returning them to their defaults. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but returning settings to their defaults doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPad > Reset.
2. Choose an option:

WARNING: If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all of your content is removed. See [Erase iPad](#).

- *Reset All Settings:* All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.
- *Reset Network Settings:* All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to "iPad," and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See [View or change cellular data settings on iPad \(Wi-Fi + Cellular models\)](#).)

When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren't installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you're on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See [Install or remove configuration profiles on iPad](#).

To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See "Mobile device management (MDM)" in the [Deployment Reference for iPhone and iPad](#).

- *Reset Keyboard Dictionary:* You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPad suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you've added.
 - *Reset Home Screen Layout:* Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.
 - *Reset Location & Privacy:* Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.
-

If you want to completely erase your iPad, see [Use Settings to erase iPad](#). If you want or need to use a computer to erase your iPad, see [Use a computer to erase iPad](#).

Restore all content to iPad from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPad.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Important: You must first create a backup of your iPad. See [Back up iPad](#).

Restore iPad from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on a new or newly erased iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap Set Up Manually, tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - If you have another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

You're asked for your Apple ID. If you've forgotten your Apple ID, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).

Restore iPad from a computer backup

1. [Using USB](#), connect a new or newly erased iPad to the computer containing your backup.
2. Do one of the following:

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPad, click Trust, then click "Restore from this backup."
- *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPad near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore Backup.

Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#).

3. Choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

See the Apple Support articles [Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Restore purchased and deleted items to iPad

You can redownload items purchased from the App Store, Book Store, Apple TV app, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a [Family Sharing](#) group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPad, see the following Apple Support articles:

- [Redownload apps and games from Apple](#)
- [Redownload books and audiobooks](#)
- [Redownload TV shows and movies that you purchased](#)
- [Redownload music](#)

You can also [recover recently deleted email](#), [photos](#), [notes](#), and [voice memos](#).

Sell, give away, or trade in your iPad

Before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPad, see the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone or iPad](#), and be sure to perform the following tasks:

- [Back up iPad](#). If you replace one iPad with another, you can [use the setup assistant](#) to restore the backup to your new iPad.

If you're replacing your iPad with another one you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data from one iPad to another. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPad > Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- Sign out of iCloud and the iTunes & App Store. Go to Settings > [*your name*], scroll down, tap Sign Out, enter your Apple ID password, then tap Turn Off.
- [Erase all content and settings](#) that contain personal information. If you previously [turned on Find My](#) for your iPad, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPad, making it ready for a new owner.

Erase iPad

When you delete data, it no longer appears in apps on iPad, but it isn't erased from iPad storage. To permanently remove all of your content and settings from your iPad, erase (wipe) your iPad. For example, erase iPad before you sell it, trade it in, or give it away.

There are two ways to erase iPad: using Settings  on your iPad, or connecting iPad to a computer with a USB cable and using the Finder or iTunes. The Settings method is the easiest. If you're unable to open Settings, you need to connect iPad to a computer and use the Finder or iTunes.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Before you begin

- If you intend to sell your iPad, trade it in, or give it away, see the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone or iPad](#) for steps to take before erasing iPad.
- To save your content and settings, [back up](#) your iPad shortly before erasing it or when you're given the option during the erase process. You can use the backup to later restore your data on a new iPhone or iPad.
- Have your iPad passcode ready. If you don't remember it, see the Apple Support article [If you forgot your iPad passcode](#).
- Have your Apple ID password ready. If you don't remember it, see the [Recover your Apple ID website](#).
- If you received your iPad from someone else and it's still associated with their Apple ID, return it to them and ask them to follow the instructions in the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone or iPad](#). Otherwise, you won't be able to erase it.

Use Settings to erase iPad

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Prepare your content and settings to transfer to a new iPad:* Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. When you finish, return to Settings > General > Transfer or Reset iPad, then tap Erase All Content and Settings.
 - *Erase all of your data from iPad:* Tap Erase All Content and Settings.

Use a computer to erase iPad

You can use a Mac or Windows PC to erase all data and settings from your iPad, restore iPad to factory settings, and install the latest version of iPadOS.

1. Connect your iPad to your computer with a USB or USB-C cable. You may also need an adapter. See [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable](#).
2. Turn on your iPad.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* Click the Finder icon in the Dock to open a Finder window, click the iPad button in the Finder sidebar (below Locations), click General at the top of the window, then click Restore iPad.

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows PC:* Make sure you have the latest version of iTunes (see the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#)). Open iTunes, click the iPad button near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore iPad.
-

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article [If you can't update or restore your iPad](#).

Install or remove configuration profiles on iPad

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPad with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that's downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings  > General > VPN & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

COMMENT: Personal Safety content

Safety, handling, and support

Important safety information for iPad

 **WARNING:** Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPad or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPad.

Handling. Handle iPad with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPad or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPad or the battery, discontinue use of iPad, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPad with a cracked screen, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPad, consider using a case or cover.

Repairing. Don't open iPad and don't attempt to repair iPad yourself. Disassembling iPad may damage it or may cause injury to you. If iPad is damaged, malfunctions, or comes in contact with liquid, contact Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. Repairs by service providers other than Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider may not involve the use of Apple genuine parts and may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the [iPad Repair website](#).

Battery. An iPad battery should only be repaired by a trained technician to avoid battery damage, which could cause overheating, fire, or injury. Batteries should be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste and according to local environmental laws and guidelines. For information about battery service and recycling, see the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Lasers. The TrueDepth camera system and the LiDAR Scanner contain one or more lasers. These laser systems may be disabled for safety reasons if the device is damaged or malfunctions. If you receive a notification on your iPad that the laser system is disabled, you should always have it repaired by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. Improper repair, modification, or use of non-genuine Apple components in the laser systems may prevent the safety mechanisms from functioning properly, and could cause hazardous exposure and injury to eyes or skin.

Distraction. Using iPad in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid using headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones.

Navigation. Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

Charging. Charge iPad with the included USB cable and power adapter. You can also charge iPad with “Made for iPad” or other third-party cables and power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPad or other property. When you charge iPad, make sure the USB cable is fully inserted into the power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It’s important to keep iPad, the USB cable, and the power adapter in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging.

Charging cable and connector. Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should be avoided.

Prolonged heat exposure. iPad and its USB power adapter comply with required surface temperature limits defined by applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device or its power adapter when it’s operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don’t sleep on a device or power adapter, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it’s connected to a power source. Keep your iPad and its power adapter in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

USB power adapter. To operate the Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don’t use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don’t connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.
- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.

- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.
- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

USB power adapter specifications:

Frequency	50 to 60 Hz, single phase
Line voltage	100 to 240 Vac
Output voltage	Refer to the output marking on the power adapter

Hearing loss. Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit on iPad, see [Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings](#). For more information about hearing loss, see the [Sound and Hearing website](#).

 **WARNING:** To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

Radio frequency exposure. iPad uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize exposure, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory > RF Exposure, or see the [RF Exposure website](#).

Radio frequency interference. Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices. Although iPad is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPad can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPad, or [use airplane mode](#) or Settings  > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPad wireless transmitters.

Medical device interference. iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard, Magic Keyboard Folio, and Apple Pencil contain magnets as well as components and/or radios that emit electromagnetic fields. These magnets and electromagnetic fields might interfere with medical devices.

Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard for iPad or Apple Pencil. Manufacturers often provide recommendations on the safe use of their devices around wireless or magnetic products to prevent possible

interference. If you suspect iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard for iPad or Apple Pencil are interfering with your medical device, stop using these products.

Medical devices such as implanted pacemakers and defibrillators may contain sensors that respond to magnets and radios when in close contact. To avoid any potential interactions with these devices, keep your iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard for iPad and Apple Pencil a safe distance away from your device (more than 6 inches/15cm, but consult with your physician and your device manufacturer for specific guidelines).

Not a medical device. iPad is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Medical conditions. If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPad or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPad.

Explosive and other atmospheric conditions. Charging or using iPad in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPad to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPad functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.

Repetitive motion. When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPad, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPad and consult a physician.

High-consequence activities. This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

Choking hazard. Some iPad accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

Magnetic interference. The Magic Keyboard and Magic Keyboard Folio contain magnets that hold iPad securely in place. Avoid placing cards that store information on a magnetic strip—such as credit cards or hotel key cards—on Magic Keyboard and Magic Keyboard Folio surfaces that attach to iPad, as such contact may demagnetize the card.

For Australian customers, see the [Online Safety resources website](#).

Important handling information for iPad

Cleaning. Clean iPad immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPad:
 - *On an iPad with a Home button:* Press and hold the top button until the slider appears, then drag the slider.
 - *On other iPad models:* Simultaneously press and hold the top button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.
 - *All models:* Go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth. If your iPad Pro 11-inch (M4) or iPad Pro 13-inch (M4) has nano-texture glass (available only on models with 1 TB and 2 TB of storage), use the included Apple Polishing Cloth to clean it.
- Avoid getting moisture in openings.
- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

The front of iPad is made of glass with a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch the glass.

Using connectors, ports, and buttons. Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

Lightning to USB Cable. ([models](#) with a Lightning connector) Discoloration of the Lightning connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning cable or connector become warm during use or your iPad won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning connector.

Lightning to USB Cable or USB-C Charge Cable. (depending on [model](#)) Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable. Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

Operating temperature. iPad is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPad can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPad to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPad or charging the battery, it is normal for iPad to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPad exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:

- iPad stops charging.
- The screen dims.
- A temperature warning screen appears.
- Some apps may close.

Important: You may not be able to use iPad while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPad can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPad to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPad again.

See the Apple Support article [Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures](#).

Find more resources for iPad software and service

Refer to the following resources to get more iPad-related safety, software, service, and support information.

To learn about	Do this
Using iPad safely	See Important safety information for iPad .
iPad service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the iPad Support website .
The latest information about iPad	See the iPad website .
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the Apple Support website .
Managing your Apple ID account	Sign in to your Apple ID account page .
Using iCloud	See the iCloud User Guide .
Using iTunes for Windows	See the iTunes User Guide for Windows .
Using other Apple iPad apps	See the App Store Support website .
Finding your iPad serial number or IMEI	You can find your iPad serial number or International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) on the iPad packaging. Or, on iPad, go to Settings  > General > About. See the Apple Support article Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch .
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the iPad Support website .
Viewing iPad regulatory information	On iPad, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the Battery Service and Recycling website .
Using iPad in an enterprise environment	See the Apple at Work website .
Using iPad in education	See the Education website .

FCC compliance statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.
One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW
Cupertino, CA 95014
USA
apple.com/contact

ISED Canada compliance statement

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Operation in the 5925–7125 MHz band shall not be used for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

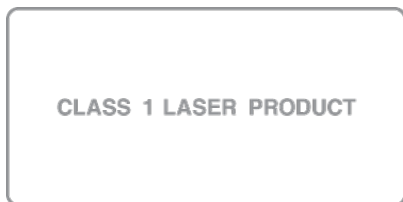
Les appareils dans la bande 5925-7125 MHz ne doivent pas être utilisés pour contrôler des systèmes d'aéronefs sans pilote ou pour communiquer avec de tels systèmes.

Apple and the environment

At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. For more information, see our [Environment website](#).

Class 1 Laser information for iPad

iPad Pro 11-inch and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation and later) are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.



Disposal and recycling information for iPad

Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)

For free recycling of your old iPad, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the [Apple Trade In website](#).

Disposal and Recycling Information



The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For information about Apple's recycling program, recycling collection points, restricted substances, and other environmental initiatives, visit apple.com/environment.

Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite apple.com/br/environment.

Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita apple.com/mx/environment o apple.com/la/environment.

Turkey environmental information

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Battery service

The lithium-ion battery in iPad should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider. See the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

警告：不要刺破或焚烧。该电池不含水银。



廢電池請回收

Unauthorized modification of iPadOS

iPadOS is designed to be reliable and secure from the moment you turn on your device. Built-in security features help protect against malware and viruses and secure user access to personal information and corporate data. Unauthorized modifications to iPadOS (also known as “jailbreaking”) bypass security features and can cause numerous issues such as security vulnerabilities, instability, and shortened battery life to the hacked iPad.

- **Security vulnerabilities.** Jailbreaking your device eliminates security layers designed to protect your personal information and your iPadOS device. With this security removed from your iPadOS device, hackers may steal your personal information, damage your device, attack your network, or introduce malware, spyware, or viruses.
- **Instability.** Unauthorized modifications can cause frequent and unexpected crashes of the device, crashes and freezes of built-in apps and third-party apps, and loss of data.
- **Shortened battery life.** Hacked software can cause an accelerated battery drain that shortens the operation of iPad on a single battery charge.
- **Unreliable voice and data.** Unauthorized modifications can cause dropped calls, slow or unreliable data connections, and delayed or inaccurate location data.
- **Disruption of services.** Services such as iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, Apple Pay, Visual Voicemail, Weather, and Stocks, may be disrupted or no longer work on the device. Additionally, third-party apps that use the Apple Push Notification Service may experience difficulty receiving notifications or may receive notifications intended for a different device. Other push-based services, such as iCloud and Exchange, may experience problems syncing data with their respective servers.
- **Inability to apply future software updates.** Some unauthorized modifications may cause damage to iPadOS that is not repairable. This can result in the hacked iPad becoming permanently inoperable when a future Apple-supplied iPadOS update is installed.

Apple strongly cautions against installing any software that modifies iPadOS. It is also important to note that unauthorized modification of iPadOS is a violation of the iOS and iPadOS Software License Agreement and because of this, Apple may deny service for an iPad that has any unauthorized software installed.

Information about products not manufactured by Apple, or independent websites not controlled or tested by Apple, is provided without recommendation or endorsement. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the selection, performance, or use of third-party websites or products. Apple makes no representations regarding third-party website accuracy or reliability. Contact the vendor for additional information.

ENERGY STAR® compliance statement for iPad



To save energy, iPad is set to lock after two minutes of user inactivity. To change this setting, go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then select an option. To unlock an iPad with a Home button, press the top button or the Home button. To unlock other iPad models, tap the screen or press the top button.

iPad meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency. Reducing energy consumption saves money and helps conserve valuable resources; see the [Energy Star website](#).

Copyright © 2024 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Max, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, AirTag, App Clip Code, App Clips, Apple Books, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Pencil, Apple Podcasts, Apple Pro Display XDR, Apple Studio Display, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, Center Stage, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, iMessage, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Photos, Mac, macOS, Magic Keyboard, Magic Mouse, Magic Trackpad, Memoji, Numbers, Pages, Photo Booth, Retina, Retina HD, Safari, Siri, Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard, Smart Keyboard Folio, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Multi-Touch and SharePlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple News, Apple News+, App Store, Genius, iCloud, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, iCloud+, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Fitness+ and Apple One are service marks of Apple Inc.

Apple
One Apple Park Way
Cupertino, CA 95014
[apple.com](#)

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, Beats^X, Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

ENERGY STAR® is a U.S. registered trademark.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.

Copyright © 2024 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Max, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, AirTag, App Clip Code, App Clips, Apple Books, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Pencil, Apple Podcasts, Apple Pro Display XDR, Apple Studio Display, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, Center Stage, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, iMessage, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Photos, Mac, macOS, Magic Keyboard, Magic Mouse, Magic Trackpad, Memoji, Numbers, Pages, Photo Booth, Retina, Retina HD, Safari, Siri, Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard, Smart Keyboard Folio, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Multi-Touch and SharePlay are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple News, Apple News+, App Store, Genius, iCloud, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, iCloud+, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Fitness+ and Apple One are service marks of Apple Inc.

Apple

One Apple Park Way
Cupertino, CA 95014

apple.com

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, Beats^X, Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

ENERGY STAR® is a U.S. registered trademark.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.